



異世界

建國記

different
world
Foundation

桜木 桜那
illust.

ファミ通文庫

OTHERWORLD NATION FOUNDING CHRONICLES

- *Isekai Kenkokuki* -

- Volume 1 -

THE CURSED FOREST AND THE GRIFFON

AUTHOR

Passing Villagers

**[Translated by: joeglens | Pengu | Killerpant |
Parallelnovels | Isekai Shousetsu]**

- SYNOPSIS -

A protagonist reborn in another world.

Apparently he had been reincarnated as an abandoned child.

Before his eyes were abandoned children like him.

In order to survive, he led them into farming.

Little by little, orphans gathered, and upon hearing rumors of a village,
others began to migrate.

The group that had been nothing but children had become a village before
anyone realized.

And then various countries in the surroundings started to have an eye on it...

This is the epic tale of the man who would later be known as the Divine
Emperor.

Story of a dude reincarnated in another world.

Orphan Leader ⇒ Village Chief ⇒ Head of a Great Clan ⇒ King of a Nation ⇒
Emperor

A management-type fantasy story set in a world in its early days.

異世界建国記



©2017 Sakuragisakura・luna

法兰克斯というの、とても
分かり易く説明するなら長い槍と盾
を持って敵に突つ込むという、とて
も単純な戦術である。

「あれ、要するにただの押し合いな
ので時の運と士気頼りなんですよ」
「側面を騎兵で攻撃するというのは
どうだ?」

法兰克斯は知っていますよね

バルトロ・ポンペイウス

長い槍を全員で持っている法兰
クスは基本、前以外進めないので
側面を攻撃されると一瞬で総崩れに
なる。だから普通は軽歩兵や騎兵で
側面の守りを固める。

「それは考えましたが、騎兵が用意
できません」

「……じゃあ、敵の弱点の
右側を叩くために
あえて左側に戦力を集中配置するのは?」





Story

気がついたら知らない森の中で、
知らない子供の姿になっていた。

そこは神獣グリフォンが住む、
人間が踏み入ってはならない森だった。

だが、その子供が異世界から転生したこと、
精神が大人であることを知ったグリフォンは、
森に立ち入ったことを許す代わりに、
あることを依頼する。

そして子供にアルムスという名をつけた。

グリフォンの依頼とは、森に捨てられた
子供たちが独り立ちするまで
面倒を見ろ、というものだった。

3年間は、食料だけはグリフォンが
用意してくれるという。

アルムスは前世の知識と経験を生かし、
30人の子供たちとともに3年後の自立を目指す。
畑を作り、農具を工夫し、
子供たちの将来のために勉強を教え……
隣国の王の知識も得て、
村の生活は徐々に安定していった。

そんなある日、村に難民の一団が現れる。どうやら近隣の国で、

森の奥にグリフォンに守られた楽園が
あるという噂が広まっているらしい。

そしてついに、楽園を手に入れようと侵略を企む国が現れた!

アルムスは村と子供たちを
守ることができるのであるのか!?



Character



アルムス

前世は日本の大学生。養護施設育ちのせいか、子供たちの面倒を見るだけでなく、健康な成長や将来の自立にも心を砕く。



テトラ

森に捨てられた子供のひとり。利発で思慮深く、周辺諸國の地理や政治情勢にも詳しいが、細仕事などには弱い。



ユリア

アルムスたちから薬草を買ったことで知り合った少女。優れた呪術師だが、そのせいで友達がいなかった。



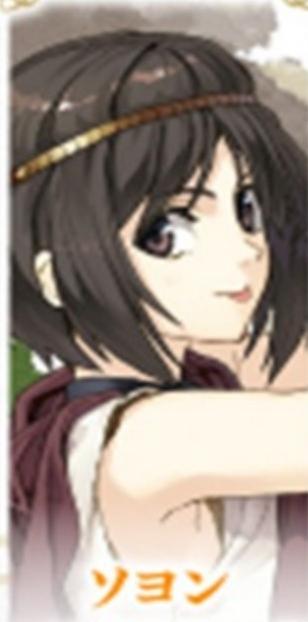
ロン

アルムスが現れるまで子供たちのリーダーだった少年。アルムスに対してはちょっと喧嘩腰だが、責任感は強い。



ロズワード

ロン以上に高圧的でアルムスに反発するが、あることがきっかけでアルムスを「兄さん」と慕うようになる。



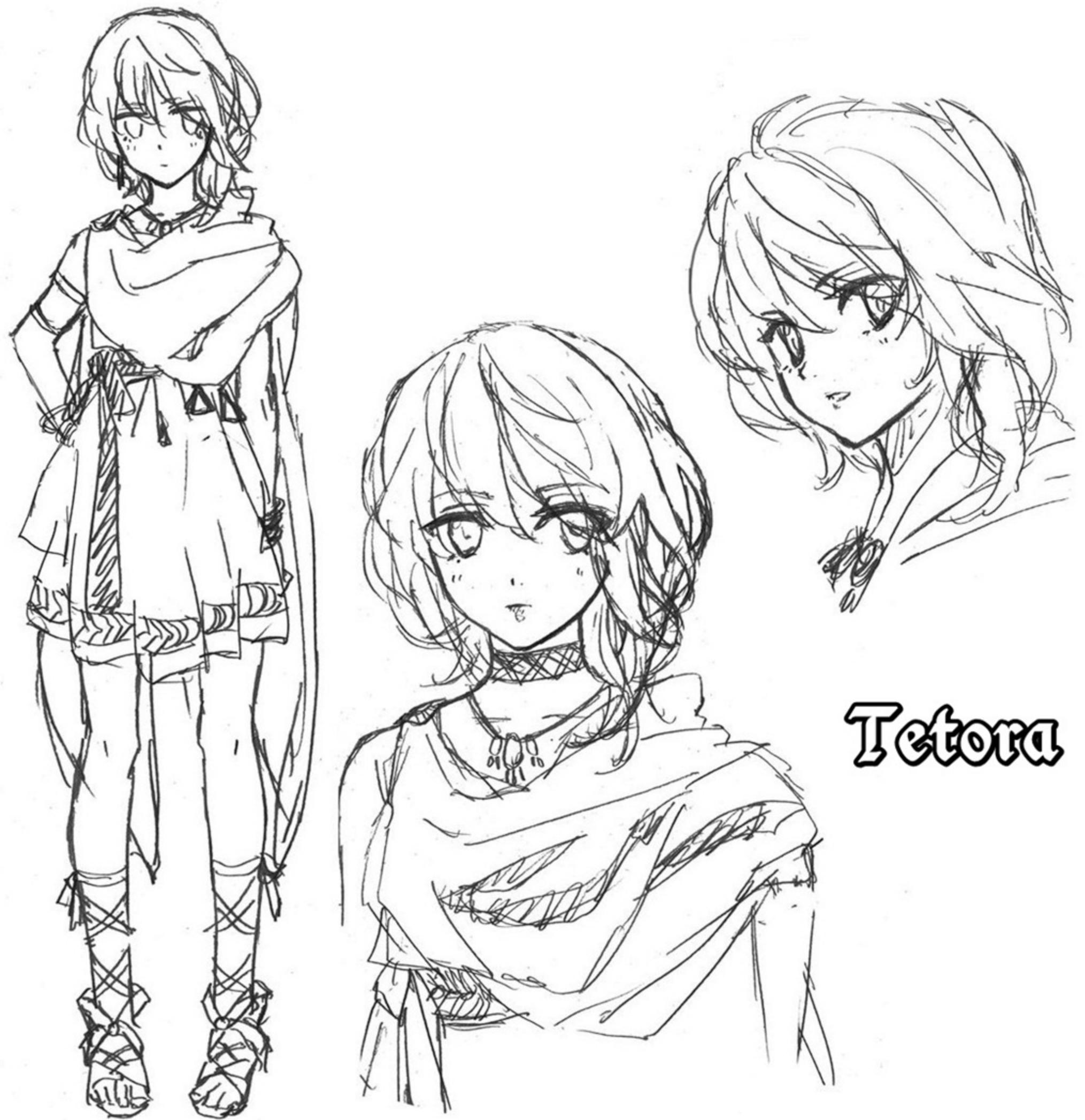
ソヨン

ロンと同じ村出身の幼馴染み。いつもロンと仲良く口げんかをしている。



Almis





Tectora

Julia



CHAPTER 1

POSSESSION

Death had suddenly come to me.
From an unexpected place and time.

In front of a large truck.

Time had moved slowly. Things that I had left undone appeared on my mind one by one and disappears.

My boss from my previous part-time job, my friend, my university professor. That reminds me, I haven't submitted my report yet.....

And lastly everyone from the orphanage.

I don't think they would end up thanking me for my life insurance.

I still wanted to live with more thrills in my life if possible.

When I thought so, I heard a voice of a kid laughing, and every bone in my body was broken.



I was in the forest when I woke up.....

I looked around and towards the sky.

The moon, which I felt was bigger than the moon that I knew, was shining in the sky.

The trees that were illuminated by the moonlight were very big. I wonder how many times taller the trees had grown compared to me?

Was this the afterlife?

There was a story about a flower garden and the Sanzu River, but I didn't catch a sight of it.

This was a shabby afterlife.

Where the hell am I.....?

Suddenly, I felt something bitter in my mouth.

It was some grass when I spat it out.

Why did I eat some grass?

And then I realized that I was famished.

Dizziness, fatigue and the general feeling of malaise assailed my whole body.

If I don't eat something I will die for sure.....

I must look for something that I can possibly eat.

Acorn, mushrooms too, anything is okay.

I need something I'm able to eat.

Suddenly, a big centipede entered my field of vision.

Usually, I would scream and run away from that place, but I just stared it for some reason.

Looking at it carefully, I think I could clearly see it had so much muscles.

I'm certain the poison was on the mouth, aside from the mouth, will I able to eat it.....?

.....

.....

Can I eat it?

For the first time, I ate an unappetizing centipede.



“Come to think of it, will I be okay from the parasites?”

After the centipede settled in my stomach, I became worried.

I was a little worried.....

Will I become stupid if I don't have enough nourishment?

However, I don't know how to start a fire. Oh well, might as well eat it raw since I need to survive.

Since I chewed it well, it's going to be all right, going to be all right. Probably.

If my brain worked half as much and hesitated, I might die from starvation.

I just wished that there wasn't any parasites present.

“I'm thirsty.....”

I began to walk to look for water.

I want to wash out the aftertaste of the centipede in my mouth quickly.

I felt it was ten minutes of walking when I found a brook.

The words that came to my mind was to not drink the water, but there's no way around since I don't know how to start a fire to boil it.

“I have returned to the living.....”

Water was important after all.

Because the water looks clear, I think I'm safe from parasites. Probably.

I looked at the water surface on the brook.

My face was illuminated by the moonlight.....

.....

.....

.....

Who was this guy?

An emaciated gray-haired kid was reflected on the surface of the water.

??????

Wait, wait, surely the reflection on the water was wrong. Even the reflection of the light may sometimes go wrong.

I rejected the reality before me because I don't understand what this means in my mind.

I touched my cheeks timidly.

I could see that my cheek bones were visible.

I was not fat, but I'm not that skinny for my cheek bones to be visible.

Next, I tried pulling my hair. My hair was gray.

A typical Japanese should have raven-black hair.....

This was reality.

In other words, this was that, it's that famous...

“It's reincarnation.....”

I looked up at the night sky.

The size of the moon that was shining in the sky was twice as big as the moon from Earth.

CHAPTER 2

GRIFFON

Reincarnation.

It was a phenomenon in *fictions* in which it had the highest probability to occur when one was run over by a truck.

Fictions are made up stories, to put it bluntly, they are stories that didn't occur in real life.

Thus, reincarnation was a lie, it's impossible to occur in reality.

Yeah, it should be impossible.

"This is a dream. I'm sure, this must be just a dream. I'm sure I will be on a bed in a hospital when I wake up, or being ran over by the truck was a dream. Yeah, I'm sure of it. Humans just simply die so it's impossible."

I laid down on the ground while thinking so.

The night sky was full of stars and a huge moon.

So beautiful~ for a dream!

I closed my eyes.

I believed that when I wake up, all of this was just a dream in the end.



This was the reality after all!

I checked my face on the water surface under the bright morning sun and despaired.

What am I going to do now?

I have nothing to reply to that!

“However, the face is not that bad.”

What reflected in front of me was a young boy— no, my face.

Emaciated, and dirty like a stray dog, but each part still looks good.

The color of his skin was generally known as olive color.

“Oh well, now that I am awake, there’s nothing to be done about it.....”

To start with, I need to begin preparing the necessities to survive.

After gathering some information and if there was a way to return to Japan, I will return, if not I will have to live here.

I shall go with that objective for now.

But first I have to say one thing.....

“My body needs some food.”

So I stood up.



I searched in the forest.

I thought the trees in the forest was really big, but now I understand.

It looked big because I shrank. Calling the tree huge was not really huge.

“Nevertheless, there is nothing here, in this forest.”

There weren’t any kinds of nuts or fruits at all.

The grass that I somehow ate was growing inside the forest... I’ll hold back for now since I don’t want to die.

Judging from the temperature I’m feeling, seems like it’s summer.

There should be one thing I can eat during summer. Maybe my search method was wrong.

In the first place, I do not have any knowledge regarding wild grasses. Besides, I'm assuming this place was another world.

It was a mystery to me whether the vegetation was the same as the ones on Earth.

"Either way, I have no choice but to eat insects....."

I watched a line of ants in front of me.

Although it was thanks to the centipede last night that I regained some physical strength, it doesn't mean that I have to eat more immediately.

But this body had insufficient nutrition in the first place.

I may not be able to move tomorrow if I pushed myself all day long.

I should, at least, learn how to start a fire.

So that I can grill and eat with a peace of mind some ants, cicadas, centipedes, and even some scorpions too.

Oh well, I did eat something raw while still wriggling yesterday.

I wonder how can I start a fire.

I know that frictional heat caused by rubbing two twigs will start fire.....

Igniting a fire was a mystery to me, I can't even find some suitable twigs.

I feel that it's not a wise move to waste my physical strength and time if I can't do it.

It's probably better to search for a human dwelling.

"Oi kid, you over there. This is this one's territory. Leave at once."

I was called out from behind.

The voice seems to be commanding, but I'm certain it belongs to a human person.

The heavens haven't abandoned me yet!!

“Actually, I’m lost.....”

When I looked back, there was a monster before my eyes.

The face and upper body looked like a hawk and it had a huge wing.

The lower part of the body had four legs, like a lion.

It was a Griffon.

The heavens seem to have abandoned me.



“Umm, I don’t taste good! I’m only skin and bones. I only ate a centipede yesterday. So it’s better if you sto— stop!”

I backed off.

I was reincarnated with great pain, why do I have to go through so much effort to pick up my life back!

“This one is picky with food. Who would eat something disgusting like you bastard? Do you think this one is a fool?”

“It’s— it’s not like that. Ahahahaha. In fact, I’m actually leaving now. Goodbye~”

I began to run at full speed. It seems like the other party doesn’t want to eat me and just wants me out. Then I should be able to escape. Since it was not my intent to invade the territory or domain of that person(?).

woosh woosh woosh

I heard a noise of flapping wings.

Sands was flying everywhere, and I reflexively closed my eyes.

When I opened my eyes, the Griffon was in front of me.

Furthermore, it was angry and its feather was ruffled.

Why!?

"Are you trying to tell me that this one's territory ends ahead? Everything inside the forest is my territory, a person cannot enter or leave. That was the pledge. Even so you bastard, are you still planning to acquire your food on this one's territory?"

"I'm sorry. My bearing was wrong for a bit. It is indeed still your grace's territory ahead, therefore....."

"Don't lie! The pledge between this one and your bastard people has been passed down for these past 200 years! Even little kids know it!"

Even if you said that, I don't know what I don't know.

The beast had a majestic appearance in spite of having a short fuse.

"Tell me a little more honest excuse. If you do so, this one will let you live."

The Griffon said so as it scowls at me. A chill ran up through my whole body.

This guy intends to kill me. Just because I'm an eyesore.

I don't have any excuses.

"That..... Actually, I was reincarnated."

"Haa? This one doesn't understand the meaning."

The expression of the Griffon changed. Its eyes were glittering and shining. I may actually die here.

"Well, you see, when I woke up I was already in the forest, I don't even know why I became a kid. This is the truth you know? Please believe me."

I knelt on the ground and begged. I want to be pardoned from dying on the second day because I was reincarnated with great pains.

“Hmm.....”

Whether my desperate kneeling worked, I felt that the Griffon’s killing intent had subsided.

The eyes of the griffon shined red.

“Little one... Is a Lost Person? I see. Then it is no wonder little one didn’t know. This one is sorry.”

Suddenly the Griffon’s killing intent disappeared completely.

I don’t understand it quite well, but I do somewhat understand.

“This one feel sorry for little one. Living from your hometown that you are familiar to such a remote place, oh well, there is no method to return. It is your responsibility to be liked by the young ones. If you want to blame someone, blame your own life.”

I didn’t quite understood it, but this fellow seems to know something about reincarnation.

“Umm..... What is a Lost Person?”

“Those are people from another world coming over to this world.”

“It’s not being born again?”

“Huh?”

The Griffon was puzzled as it didn’t understand the meaning of my question.

I explained what happened to my current body. The Griffon groaned.

“Hmm, this one dont know. This one have not heard such phenomenon. The Lost Person this one met a hundred years ago didn’t say they were reborn, but..... Well, is there such a thing like that?”

“Haa.”

“To begin with, the phenomenon is called Lost Person. Although you have been reborn to this extent, nothing strange had happened.”

I didn’t really understood it, but the Griffon started to arbitrarily understand it.

I cannot understand it at all.

It's no use worrying now. I will probably have to steadily investigate it.

"By the way little one, you explained earlier that your soul was of an adult?"

"Yeah, it is. It's difficult now, but what can I do?"

The griffon grinned at my question..... It was really visible.

"Instead of just ignoring it, this one request a job from the little one."

CHAPTER 3

CHILDREN

“What is this.....”

“Little one will understand once you see it. It’s the same race as the little one.”

That guy took me to a nearby cave.

Upon entering, I saw 30 human children.

Five of them are still toddlers. 20 of them are between ages 7 – 9 years old. And the remaining 5 are about the same age as the current me.

“Why are the children became like this?”

“You know, humans have recently been coming to abandon their children on this one’s forest.”

I see. It probably means there was a famine.

I thought because they are starving, the parents just abandoned them in the forest.

“So, I will take care of the children?”

“It is as the little one said. This will make the discussion move quickly.”

The Griffon nods in a big way.

I do not dislike children. Rather, I like them very much.

I can greatly sympathize with them who had been left by their parents since I also grew up in an orphanage. Therefore, I don’t have any problem with helping them.

But.....

“There is nothing to eat and can they even speak?”

“Within three years, young one must bring in food. Young one must do something within three years.”

This was unexpected.....

It's probably because I said that I even ate an insect.

This guy, was he actually a good guy?

"Why don't you help them?"

"If a starving puppy approached and clings, will little one pick it up? After that, will little one irresponsibly abandon them? Picking them up is akin to being responsible for them. That's how it is."

I see.

He certainly was aware that it was bad.

Although he had the capacity to help them, they will just starve if he doesn't use that capacity.

It was not good for that guy's mental well-being.

However, the Griffon was different from a human.

This guy probably doesn't know how to raise a human.

Therefore, that guy was troubled.

The discussion had been settled.

I have to introduce myself to the children first.

"That being the case, I am now your leader! Please treat me well."

When I said so.....

"△○×●■◇○"

They responded in a language from a universe I didn't know.



This was bad news.

I don't understand this world's language.

If I calmly thought about it, there was now way that Japanese and this world's language will be the same. Such opportunity was not realistic.

Associating with them as a leader and living on this place will be difficult.

Wait a minute? How was I able to speak with the Griffon?

"This one apologize. I just remembered that a Lost Person are not able to speak the language of the land. This one forgot about it."

"Why can I speak with you then?"

"Because this one have *Divine Blessing of the Divine Word*. So it's only natural."

Divine blessing..... Some fantasy-like thing came out.

As expected for a Griffon. It did have mysterious power after all.

"But this is a problem. All right, this one will lend you a divine blessing for a while."

".....You will lend it!?"

"Usually, it's impossible. However, this one has *Divine Blessing of Lending*."

As expected of you, Griffon-senpai!

Having a head of an eagle and a lower body of a lion was not just for show.

"But if I could speak with the children, wouldn't I be unable to speak with you?"

"Fool, this one cannot simply lend the precious divine blessing to the little one. I can only lend *Divine Blessing of Language*."

"How many divine blessings do you have?"

There were three mentioned in passing up to now.

Was there a special bargain sale for divine blessings?

"There are 12. Although, only a few of them are usable. *Divine Blessing of Language* is useless to this one, the problem is this one's vocal chord."

Either way, he had too many, doesn't it?

This guy, he is an *unimaginable* cheat beast. Or was this just average specs for a Griffon? To begin with, including this one, how many Griffon are there?

Oh well, it doesn't matter.

"That being the case now, once again, treat me well."

A foreign language naturally came forth from my mouth.

This is certainly convenient. With this, I don't need to study English, doesn't it?

"Yes..... Please treat us also well..... Oniichan."

A brown haired girl replied.

Oniichan..... That really sounds good.

"You, tell me your name!"

A seemingly brazen brat asked me.

"Before you ask for my name, you should tell first."

I replied with a cliche phrase and the kid gave his name with a verbal smackdown.

"It's Ron. Until now, I'm the leader. See, I gave my name! Now tell me your name!"

"My name is....."

I was about to say it when I realized.

What should I name myself?

Should I give my Japanese name? But I'm not Japanese anymore. It just doesn't feel right if I used my Japanese name.

No, my name does not matter but.....

"My name for this place, what should you think is good?"

I asked the Griffon.

“How about **Almis**?”

“What does that mean?”

“There is no particular meaning. This one only thought it sounds good.”

I see.

But perhaps even so, what was supplied to me was good because it was spoken in this world without any meaning to it.

“Then I am Almis. Please treat me well, Ron-kun.”

I stretched out my hand. Ron-kun just looked the other way.

Why was it?

“How old are you?”

“20 years old.”

“That’s a lie!!”

Even so, that was the truth but.....

I looked towards the Griffon. Please, I beg you to tell them.

“What this little one is saying was true. It looks to me little one became a kid before he knew it, right?”

“Yeah!..... It is what the Griffon had said.....”

Ron-kun suddenly became meek.

He then glared at me and declared,

“I don’t recognize you as our leader yet!!”

Was that so?

Even so, I understand where he is coming from. A new kid suddenly appeared and became a leader.

“Forgive us. Ron-kun doesn’t mean any ill-will. He is just somewhat stupid.....”

The girl who called me oniichan a while ago covered up for Ron.

“What’s you name?”

“I am Soy়on. Ron-kun is my childhood friend.....”

I see. Childhood friend huh.

Ron-kun, you are one lucky bastard for having a pretty childhood friend.

“Oi! Who are you calling stupid”

“But that is the truth.”

“You’re stupid for calling me stupid!”

“Then you’re stupid too, Ron-kun.”

“”Stupid stupid stupid stupid stupid stupid!!””

They suddenly began to quarrel

More like a lover’s quarrel.

Looking at the interaction between the two, the other children were laughing too.

It seems to be quite a lively bunch.

Looking from the appearance at least.

Speaking accurately, they can’t be lively if they don’t act lively.

That’s right.

Because they were deceived by their parents, by leading them deep into this forest and abandoned them.

It’s only expected for them to have some psychological shock.

Who among the children will still believe in their parents?

They are desperately trying to forget it.

How long did Ron-kun desperately shouldered being a leader?

The reason Soyon-chan welcomed me was not to because she had confidence in me, but probably because it was to lessen the burden of Ron-kun.

The reason the two were bickering was to brighten up everyone around us now.

I will probably do something idiotic like this one every day.

I'm just not sure whether they are doing this intentionally or unintentionally.

However, either way, it was abnormal for a child that they must do such thing.

“I can absolutely help them,”

I muttered.

CHAPTER 4

IRON FARMING TOOLS

The self -introduction was over.

All of them were abandoned one way or another, but it was definitely their parents that abandoned them.

They came from all over the place.

Seems like I have made some friends these past several days. In other words, there was space for me to be close to them. It was a total relief.

The gender ratio here was fifty-fifty.

Normally, girls take more precedence, but somehow those weren't followed since it was fifty-fifty.

Even so, it does not matter now.

For now, let me only introduce five most important people.

Ron-kun. 12 years old. The oldest among them. Taller than the current me. He was slightly contentious, but he had a sense of responsibility.

Soyon-chan. 12 years old. Born from the same village as Ron-kun. Very cute. Will probably be Ron-kun's wife in the future. Always speaks respectfully to me.

Ron has his uses, but he has the biggest attitude among the children. I felt lonely by how close they really are.

Roswald-kun. 11 years old. He was the number two guy until I came. He was more high-handed than Ron-kun. He doesn't really mind me.

Tetora-chan. 10 years old. Taciturn. Basically doesn't speak.

Gram-kun. 10 years old. Petite and timid.

These five people are the central figures of this group.

"Still, I cannot think of anything other than working on a farm."

I spoke in front of these 5 people about my plan.

Frankly speaking, it's meaningless to inquire the opinion of a kid, it would be better to start it by myself without considering their opinion.

I was just a stranger who acted along the flow.

Still, declining them just because they are 10 years younger than me was out of the question.

"But you know, isn't working on the field extremely hard? How are we going to do it?"

That was Ron-kun's opinion.

I totally agree with him.

The uncultivated land was extremely hard to begin with. Because the roots of vegetation are stretched all around, removing them would be hard work.

To all of the children, it's on a level that would be fatal.

Besides, among the children that can be useful, there are only six of us including me that are 10 years or older.

This would be reckless.

But it's better than not doing anything.

"It's impossible I tell you. Let's just stop."

Roswald made the remark indifferently while stretching out his legs.

And then stared at me.

"I'm not convinced that what this guy had said is good. Isn't that right, Tetora?

".....On the other had, there is only agriculture to obtain a semblance of a stable food

supply."

Tetora seems to agree to my opinion.

"What do you think, Gram?"

"Eh!? Well, that..... I don't know."

Gram had a scared expression.

Oh well, it's only natural he doesn't know. He was only a kid after all.

"So, how are we going to cultivate the land?"

"We need to buy some iron farming tools. If we have that I think it will considerably be easy."

"Buy? What do you mean by *buy*?"

Ah..... They don't know currency. Then it's the wrong word to use.

"It means we have to trade something for it."

"If there was something to trade for iron farming tools, it would have been on my stomach a long time ago. You're an idiot."

Roswald-kun, that was a harsh comment coming from you. Oi, only someone stupid can call someone stupid.

"There is something we can use to trade. Unfortunately, you can't eat it."

The five people were at once dumbstruck at my words. How cute.

"Hey, I have brought it."

I heard the Griffon's voice. It seems it was able to bring the objective.

"Thank you very much. With this, we'll manage somehow."

I received a huge amount of swords and spears from the Griffon. 70% are made of Iron, and 30% are made from bronze.

All of these weapons came from the brave people from all over trying to beat the

Griffon. These have been rusted from exposure, but these are still valuable metals.

“I don’t really mind. These tusks and nails are unnecessary for this one. It doesn’t easily return to the ground, and I’m troubled that these were stinking the place. Quickly dispose of these things. Now then, there is still a huge amount remaining.”

The Griffon flew away as it said so.

The human sense of value was totally different from a beast.

“Are— are we going to war?”

“This is different.”

I rebuked Gram-kun’s remark. I mean, Gram-kun, your imagination was somewhat radical.

In spite of being a coward.

“Surely this will make us powerful, but there is no way a child can beat an adult. Even if a child has a weapon to swing around, they can still be defeated by an adult barehanded.”

It’s clearly evident who’s going to win a match between an adult and a child. Don’t act so rashly. Even if you are at the death’s door from starvation.

“Are we trading it for iron farming tools?”

“It is as you said, Tetora-chan!”

I was going to pat Tetora’s head but she dodged. Oniisan was sad by that.

“Shouldn’t we trade it for food?”

Tetora-chan answered Ron-kun’s question.

“If you only buy food. We can’t secure a stable food supply.”

“Ah, is that so?”

Ron-kun quickly backed out. Ron-kun being obedient was a good Ron-kun.

“But how can we easily dig up the soil with only iron farming tools? The soil here is

terribly hard."

Tetora-chan said it.

"We will have to look for a place with soft soil. Worst case, we will have to employ adults. But it might be futile as they may not be willing to help us base on the condition we set."

Using Griffon-sama's authority would be great.

Even so, this will be only used as a last resort.

There are other ways for the Griffon itself to help me.

Trading the iron swords for food would only delay the inevitable.

For now, the discussion has been settled to exchange these weapons for farming tools as the plan.

There were no objections.

Oh well, I would be troubled if there were objection as I don't have an alternative plan.

"Now the problem is where to trade these..... Is there anyone who knows the geography around here?"

I looked at Ron-kun as I said it. Ron-kun shakes his head at a tremendous speed.

"It's impossible. I don't know any villages nearby. Soyon?"

"I'm sorry..... I don't know either."

"Roswald-kun?"

"Eh!? I..... That..... I know but I can't really say....."

"In other words, you don't know. Gram-kun?"

"I—, I—, I—, I—, I'm sorry....."

Oh well, it can't be helped. Their culture level is on a level that doesn't know currency. It was unlikely for a farmers child to know what's outside of their village.....

“Tetora-chan?”

“I know.”

I guess that's it..... Eh!?

“You know?”

“A little.”

And so Tetora-chan told me the area around the forest.

It seems the name of the forest was Romano Forest.

On the east side of the forest, there was a country which was ruled by King Rosaith. A large country on the northwest was ruled by King Gilberd. A large country on the northeast was ruled by King Domorgal. And to the north of the country by King Gilberd and King Domorgal, was the country ruled by King Faludam.

“The country ruled by King Rosaith is not that big. It doesn't have a proper iron farming tools, and they don't have many iron weapons. I think there would be iron farming tools in the country ruled by King Domorugal and King Gilberd because they are quite big countries. Because there is famine currently, it was an excuse for both the country of King Gilberd and King Domorgal to wage war against the country of King Faludam.”

“I see. In other words, now is the best timing. On the contrary, if we don't go quickly, those farming tools will be melted down and converted to weapons. We must hurry.”

Why do you know so much? I want to hear where you came from but now was not the time. It would be rude if I poke while not that close to her. If we can be on a more friendly terms then it would be all right.

“Since I'm the adult.....”

Tetora-chan stared at me and said,

“Taking only all the weapons, How are we going to do it?

Hmm, she has a point. An adult will not directly speak to a child immediately. It's different during peacetime, but even more so, it's now an emergency. It's important to

win the war, but it's also equally important for the next harvest to be abundant. They won't easily trade the iron farming tools.

"Don't worry, I have thought of it properly. I will use this thing."

I show to the five of them a big feather. It was a beautiful shiny gold feather.

"Tha—, isn't that from Griffon-sama?"

Gram's voice was trembling.

"Yo—, you, did you stole it!"

Roswald shouted.

It's rude to say I stole it. I only picked up what fell.

"What are you going to do with it?"

Soyon tilts her head in confusion as she asked. Soyon-chan, you're the best for being obedient and cute.

"We would show this to them as messengers of Griffon-sama!! It won't be a problem then, don't you agree?"

"Wouldn't the wrath of heaven descend upon us?"

Ron-kun asked with anxiety written all over his face.

Although Griffon was certainly magnificent, it was not a god. The wrath of heaven will not befall unto us. At least, I thought so.

But it seems the children thought differently. Except Tetora-chan, all four of them was very anxious.

There was a difference on the sense of values between me and them due to a gap in knowledge.

"I asked for permission."

When I said so, the four of them showed an expression of relief.

The Griffon was certainly scary, but I felt that it wasn't an existence to be afraid that much.

Whether it was this or that, it's still troublesome.

“Well then, we have to leave soon. For now, we will trade 10 iron swords and 6 bronze swords from this place. It would be troublesome in the case of emergency if we trade all of it now.”

For now, we will trade just this much.

It’s really important to have farming tools immediately, but there was one more important thing.

“It would be dangerous for all of us to go. So I want one person to go with me!”

Both Gram and Roswald raised their hands when I said so.

“Alright, let’s go Tetora-chan!”

I grabbed Tetora-chan’s hand. Tetora-chan looked puzzled.

“I didn’t raise my hand.”

“What are you saying? Other than you, there’s no one here who knows the surrounding geography. You are forced to join!”

When I said so, Tetora-chan heaved a big sigh.



“We would like to trade these.”

The village chief looks suspicious from my words.

They will be suspicious to a child who suddenly identified himself as a messenger of the Griffon and wants to trade iron and bronze swords for farming tools.

I can understand their feeling.

The village chief looked at the swords and the Griffon’s feather alternately.

He seems to be troubled.

“Village Chief! I brought the blacksmith!”

Two guys ran towards us.

One of them began to examine the swords closely.

The man who I believed to be the blacksmith showed a surprising color on his face.

These swords were all brought by people to instantly defeat the Griffon. It was rusted but it was still excellent swords.

Will it be able to trade for farming tools? Will it be a cheap trade?

“What do you want?”

“Let me see, 10 plows, three axes, and probably around eight sickles is what I wanted to trade.”

Even though they are called iron farming tools, it's only the tip where iron was used. Compared to the iron sword that we brought, aside from the handle, everything was made of iron.

We can probably demand more from the amount of iron, but we are just kids here.

We can only demand just below of what I really wanted.

As a result of having been completely troubled, he agreed with the trade.

Even so, it was a good trade because all the iron farming tools will be traded for weapons when the war situation turns for the worst. For that place too.

We hinted that we might come for another trade sometime later and left the place.

CHAPTER 5

AGRICULTURE AND LIVESTOCK

Cultivating or tilling the land.

Easy to say, but that work dreadfully required much effort.

First we had to cut the trees, then clear out the grass, and then dig up the hard soil and mix it with a large amount of roots that was left.

This way, the birth of the field would be established.

But the field was not the only thing necessary for the plants. Water would be also important.

In other words, I must draw water from the river somewhere.

Oh well, I would be using a land that would be near a river because I don't want to do something so troublesome.

This was just an amateur way of thinking, but won't we be able to do something like that in one year?

I mean I would be distraught if I can't make them do it.

There was hunting, but I estimate it would be hard and difficult to feed 30 people with just hunting.

Conversely, agriculture alone would also be difficult.

There would be a need to do both.

But let's get to the main aim first of where to till a land.

I don't know what kind of land would be suitable for farming. I will even have to get permission from the Griffon if I can cut the trees on this forest.

It would be necessary to look for some other place if I can't get permission.

"That's how it is, what do you think?"

"This one doesn't particularly mind it. This one's territory is deep in the forest. As long you don't damage that place, you can cut and burn the trees as you like."

Surprisingly, I easily got permission. It's a bit anticlimactic.

"Everyone of you really likes to scratch the land. This one won't do such tedious things. Ah, now that I thought about it....."

"What, did you remember something?"

"If this one was not mistaken, humans made a village on this forest 30 years ago. It seems to have been abandoned because a plague was spreading. Which reminds me, those bastards said it was my curse. That was completely vexing."

The Griffon started to grumble and complain.

But it's really important to me if that wasn't the reason the village was deserted.

"If there was such a convenient place, then I have to go there first! So, where is that place?"

"Hmm..... This one is not really sure as the memory is quite old. Also, I don't have any interest in those things. For now, hop on. You will probably discover it from the sky. Just give up if little one can't discover it."

The Griffon showed his back to me as it said so.

Well, riding it.....

I will die if I fall.

"Hurry up."

"I understand."

Nonetheless, I don't know when it will change its mind, and the lives of 30 people are on the line. I have no choice but to get on.

I climbed up at the back of the Griffon. I will have to change my evaluation of how big it is now that I have climbed this guy.

If I was appetizing, it would probably only take one gulp to eat me.....

“Let’s go!”

“Uhii!”

A weird voice came out of my mouth.

The area around my abdomen was floating.

I don’t like riding roller coasters.....

The Griffon steadily increased its altitude without paying attention to me.

I suddenly looked downwards.

“Uwaaaaaaaaaa!!”

“Hey, don’t be noisy. And don’t choke me!”

I reflexively strengthen my hold around the Griffon’s neck.

Flying without a lifeline was scary.

My teeth spontaneously made a clattering sound.

“.....What are we going to do if I start leaking?”

“I will push you off.”

The Griffon suddenly stopped after such discussion.

“If this one is not mistaken, it was around this area..... there it is. Rejoice.”

I looked down timidly.

After all, I felt that my internal organs were floating.

But, feeling scared was worth it.

There were unnaturally few trees, and those ruins certainly looked like a house.

“We’re going down!”

“Wai—, too fast. Too fast!!!”

I screamed to the top of my lungs.



“Hmm. Still, the forest swallowed this place..... Oh well, isn’t this better than starting from the scratch?”

“Little one is right.”

The ruined village was on a considerably good location than I previously thought. A river runs through the center of the village, with this, obtaining water would be easy. Most pit-house were run-down, but there still seems some houses that will be usable if repaired.

As expected, weeds cover the fields, but it won’t be a problem if it was dug up. At least, it would be much easier from making it from scratch.

As for the fundamental problem of whether farming would be possible with only the strength of a child, I think it would be possible.

Japan’s Handenshuujunohou would distribute lands to boys and girls aged 6 years or older. I’m certain that an area of 20 ares was written on the textbook.

I’m certain that a yield of one koku (amount of rice an adult male will eat in a year) would need one-tenth of a hectare (around 10 ares).

If a six-year-old child from ancient Japan can plow 20 ares of land, we should be able to do it too.

Well, it might have been the parents that plowed it.....

Still, each of them might be able to plow around one-third by themselves. It shouldn’t be possible for both parents to plow all the allotted farmlands if they had many children.

There would also be iron farming tools that an ancient farmer wouldn’t have.

Besides, I could probably acquire an ox or a horse later and let them plow the fields.

We can probably do it.

If we can't do it, I'll just have the Griffon help us. It would be very easy for this guy to dig up the field.

"This is great, thank you very much. With this, we won't have to cultivate the land from scratch."

"But it doesn't mean this one cultivated it."

"But isn't it because of you that the people left this place?"

It was you my gracious Griffon. Without you, everything here wouldn't have happened. Well, since it was this fellow who asked for my help, it is only natural for him to cooperate.

By the way, can I ask one question?

"What is it?"

"A famine had occurred, right? Did you know what caused it?"

That question had bugged me for so long.

I only knew there was famine because of what Tetora-chan told me, but there are many reasons for famine to occur.

Crop disease, pest damage by something like a locust outbreak, damaged dealt directly by storms, or crop failure due to climate.

I would make the same mistake if I start farming without understanding the reason.

It would be slightly insensitive to ask the children, so I tried asking the Griffon.

"From what the children told this one, it was probably crop disease."

"Which crop got infected by the disease?"

“All of it.”

“Huh!?”

A disease that killed all crops? What the— that would be invincible.

“Did you just said everything? Everything from wheat to fruits?”

“It is as you said.”

What the hell was that?

I would still understand it if it was a disease that affects similar crops like wheat and barley, but for another person to say that wheat and grape was affected by the same disease?

That's like having a disease that can affect both human and a fish.

“This one too had doubt it and tried to consider something else. Will you listen?”

“Yes please.”

“This one think it's a curse.”

Hearing it was waste of time.....

“Why is little one looking at me like that? Curses are real.”

“Do you have evidence?”

“This one had a conversation with master.”

I wasn't able to say anything back when I heard it.

Oh well, if reincarnation to the otherworld and divine blessing exists, there will certainly be one or two curses, it may not be even strange if I came across it.

But who cast the curse?

“Doesn't little one comes from a species that loves to war among itself? Isn't it ridiculous for one group to weaken the power of another group?”

“Yup, what you had said was correct, however...”

I doubt there'd be anything that would make them happier than a curse that could weaken enemy nations from afar. If there really was such a curse, it'd be a really convenient tool.

“For a curse to affect a really wide area, it probably meant there is a talented practitioner.”

“Are you impressed with it? Wouldn't working on this farm meaningless if this was reduced to nothing by the curse again?”

“Huh? It's probably going to be all right. Because the humans are cowards. I don't think the curse was able to spread to this one's territory and the territory near the forest. The curse cannot also be cast multiple times in succession.”

Is it really like that.....?

This fellow knows more about the situation of this world than me.

If it says it's all right then it's probably all right. Probably.

“Well then, are we going to gather the children here now?”

“About that, it's better for them to move out tomorrow. You won't have enough daylight if you do it now.”

The Griffon said so while looking at the sun.

Right now, the sun was just past the zenith.

It was probably around 2 PM.

There was a considerable distance to the cave located south of here.

It would be different if it was an adult's leg, but these are children's legs. The day was coming to an end.

It would only take an instant if we ride the Griffon, but it would probably not like such heavy work.

And the children too will decline to ride it.

“Well then, hop on.”

“Sure..... Do I have to really get back on.....?”

I went back to the cave screaming.



“This is it, this is our new home.”

“Ooooo!!”

The children shouted with joy.

“So, leader. What are we doing first?”

Ron-kun said.

“Leader?”

“It—, it doesn’t particularly mean that I completely recognize you. Just a little. I will only recognize you a little!”

“Ron-kun..... Be more honest with yourself.”

Ron-kun and Soyon-chan began to quarrel in front of me.

It’s so fun to watch. But I, I haven’t shown any results yet. What is so good with just converting iron swords with iron farming tools?

While thinking such things, Tetora-chan whispered into my ear.

“Before you came, the group was all worn out. When someone voiced an opinion, they are rebuked by dissenting opinions but the dissenters don’t have an alternative plan. When a small child wants motherly affection and they throw tantrums and starts to cry, Ron and Oswald start to fight. That is, you have carried us all the way to where we are now.”

“Rather than feeling relieved, I feel sorrier for what happened to all of you before.”

I had a strained smile. I thought it was something anyone could do.

However, it was only possible on an adult level. A child can't do it.

My idea about trading the iron swords was just common sense thinking, but Ron-kun seems to think it was a fantastic idea.

"You're giving me too much credit. It was thanks to the Griffon that this village got abandoned."

I mumbled.

"So, what are we going to grow?"

Roswald-kun asked me while scowling. Why is this child so overbearing.....?

How can a kid be like this?

"I plan to do crop rotation farming."

"Crop rotation? Is that delicious?"

No, it's not delicious, probably.

"Explaining it roughly, we will grow Barley (Spring Planting) → Clover → Wheat (Autumn Planting) → Turnip, in this order for four years."

Since the children said this season was now for harvesting wheat, we will, unfortunately, do the wheat next year.

The current season was the season to plant turnips.

"Why are you doing it in a tedious way?"

"Don't you know that growing the same crop on the field for a long time will worsen the harvest? Clovers are really effective in revitalizing the field. This way we can grow crops all year round."

I don't know the exact details myself, but...

Because I learned it from history and geography, it's likely my only small advantage from these children that grew up in a farming village.

I was also doing a little farming in the kitchen garden of the orphanage.

Roswald-kun was still tilting his head in puzzlement. It was an expression that shows he doesn't understand at all. But I don't have the confidence to fully explain it, so I have no choice but to let them experience it.

"Really, are we growing something else?"

"Probably something like grapes or olives. That is if it's possible."

I answered Gram-kun's question.

Piecing together the information I got from the children, it seems that the climate around this area was like Mediterranean climate.

Therefore, I can't honestly say that if Norfolk Four Course Method would be suitable. Fortunately, it's still feasible because there was a river nearby.

That would be really suitable to grapes and olives. However, it takes time for the grapes and olives to mature, and I still doubt whether I can satisfy the appetite of 30 kids.

While I'm on that subject, a slope with good drainage was suitable for growing grapes and olives. But the village is on a flat ground.

Since I don't think I can grow those on a flat land, I will just have to do it in the future.

"Well then, let's immediately decide on a plan....."

All at once, the children looked at me.

"Shall we repair the house first?"

I said it while pointing at the ruined pit-house.

CHAPTER 5.5

LIVESTOCK

Livestock or Domesticated Animals were important in doing Norfolk Four-Course Method.

The advantage of Norfolk Four Course was that you can raise the domesticated animal during winter.

In addition, clover would be not enough to recover soil fertility. If you let the livestock graze on the field where the clover grows, their feces will become fertilizer. This was necessary.

“Therefore, I think we need to bring in some livestock.”

I said so in front of the children.

The children’s expression shows they were pondering. Perhaps they almost understand it.

“But you know, because of the famine will it not be hard to trade for livestock?”

“We will have to negotiate with King Rosaith’s country on the east. They don’t have enough iron ware there, right? It will probably take ten iron swords for a single cattle, we need at least two cattle.”

It will be easier to plow if we have a cattle.

Right now what I want was to break the current labor situation of only just children with at least one cattle.

“Will they trade their valuable food?”

“If I am the village chief, I would trade the cattle for iron wares, then I could get tax exemption if I present the iron wares to the country”

Wasting a cattle or two will cut the amount of people who would be supported.

And there are those who steal iron during a war to fill their belly. So, there are many people who decided to steal.

“There is only one problem.”

“What is it?”

“I don’t know how to handle a cattle.”

The children fell down in unison.



“Umm..... I can handle it somewhat. Because my parents raised livestock.”

“Really, then I’ll leave it in your care.”

Keeping a livestock was expensive but using it as a reason to cut the number of mouths to feed was a bit of a mystery to me, perhaps there are other ways to solve it you know. But I can’t probe her too deep

“I want one more to join us.”

“Then I’ll come with you.”

Ron-kun approached my candidly.

I can guess the reason. Because Ron-kun and Soyon-chan are always one set.

“Then let’s go. Tetora-chan!”

“So why me again.....?”

“Don’t you agree that you’re the most knowledgeable? What if someone deceive me?”

By the way, Ron-kun and Soyon-chan came from a village that had traded farming tools for ironware before. So I feel confident.

Also, we are actually going to the village Roswald-kun came from.

I don’t know yet where was Tetora-chan’s home village.

Because she won’t tell me herself. The only thing I know was that she was incredibly knowledgeable.

“So..... Will it only be a cattle?”

“Honestly, just one cattle is enough. But to make up for the cattle’s rations, we need to

buy goats."

The goat's meat and milk are not that tasty, but it's low maintenance. I want to buy a male-female set if possible.

"How many iron swords are we going to take?"

"We still have 15 to spare. Don't you think it's enough?"

I think 10 was enough to trade, but I'll bring it all just to be safe. Coming back would be a hassle.

"Then, let's go!"

When I said so, Tetora-chan awkwardly smiled. Do you hate it that much?



"With that said, will you trade it?"

"Hmm, this place really doesn't have food to spare....."

The village chief was hesitating, and quite rightly so.

I just kept my smile.

"Wouldn't you get tax exemption if you give the country some iron swords? Don't you think it's quite unbearable that the people of this great nation wanted weapons made of iron?"

The country of King Rosaith didn't have the technology for wrought iron.

Therefore, they import their iron via trading with northern countries. Iron was a required resource for both agriculture and war. Of course, they force unreasonable terms in order to prevent the country of King Rosaith from becoming stronger, like putting restrictions.

Besides, there was also a means of trading food with countries at war.

These brave heroes thought that they can instantly beat the Griffon by bringing these iron swords since it used high-quality iron. If this was peacetime, this trade would have already been approved.

“Fuu..... Perhaps, this is okay.....”

The village chief began to stretch his neck in all directions while looking troubled. We have waited long enough, hurry up already.

“I don’t particularly mind if you think this is unreasonable. I’ll just strike a deal with another village.”

When I said so and pretend to stand up, the village chief began to panic.

“I have decided! We will trade. What do you want?”

“I want a cattle and five goats. How about it?”

I was slightly aggressive trying to negotiate. Frankly, three or four goats were enough. They will become anxious if I raised it to five.

“Five goats..... That’s a bit pricey..... How about two?”

“Well then I’ll add two more iron swords, and instead, make it four goats, please.”

The village chief deeply nodded. He seemed convinced.

With this, we have obtained some labor and high nutrition milk.

I was relieved.



“Great, looks okay to me.”

I went inside the fenced area to see the cattle and goats.

Since I made the fence haphazardly, it was not that strong. I will have to reinforce it later.

Since it would be bad if they are able to escape, I will request the Griffon to intimidate them. By insinuating that if they escape, they will be eaten.

As for the Griffon, it said it won’t bully the innocent animals even though it was raring to go at it.

It’s not that they looked particularly appetizing.

The cow and goats can directly get some food. I don’t think they will complain

Eh!? All the grass can simply grow naturally? Well, yeah of course. Would there be a risk they will be eaten by a wolf or other carnivorous animals? Probably.

“Was there a need to keep goats immediately? It’s only a hassle.”

Tetora-chan said so.

Well, I can understand her feelings. If the cattle would be the main workforce, there was no need for a goat. Even though we must be planting barley now, taking care of the goats will just add to the burden.

But there was a reason that I need it immediately.

“It’s for the goat’s milk, although it’s not tasty, it’s nutritious.”

“.....”

Tetora-chan looks puzzled.

“Didn’t the Griffon only brought you guys fruits and meat? There’s no calcium in your diet. If there was no calcium, the bones become fragile. I think that in this world, that would be fatal. So having goats is only a bit irrational.”

“Hmm.”

“Did you understand it?”

“You were only thinking for our well-being.”

After saying it, Tetora-chan smiled.

By the way, that was the first time I saw Tetora-chan smiled.

“So, have you thought for a name?”

Ron-kun asked me while stroking the goat. He seems to really like it.

“For the goats, starting from the right will be No. 1, No.2, No. 3, and No. 4. The cattle will be No. 1 too.”

“Eh..... That’s too simple! Poor animals.”

Soyon-chan pouted while protesting.

“I feel sorry..... For these animals. They are not a friend or family or even a pet. There would probably come a time that we will eat them. If you give them a proper name,

they won't be a livestock anymore and will be a pet. It will only be heart-breaking later on."

In Japan, if you hit your pet, like a dog, it will be considered animal abuse. However, slaughtering pigs and cows are not crimes.

It's only natural, but pets and livestock are different.

A livestock was a human tool. You must not be affected by emotion. If you give a proper name to a livestock, they will become a pet.

It may be impossible for the children to take care of them without affection, but I, at least, want to avoid properly naming them.

"Is that so..... We will have to eat them someday....."

The children looked at the goats and the cattle with sorrowful faces.

The mood became something like it was a funeral.

But it didn't mean that it has been decided we have to eat them particularly.....

"Because the meat of the goat is not that tasty, we won't eat them except for extreme situations. And the cattle was an important workforce. Let's work hard on farming so it doesn't have to come to that."

In order to change the mood of the children, I told them in a loud voice,

"For now, I want to do something about the weed that had overgrown on the field..... Rather than weeding, it will be much faster for the goats and the ox to eat it. So let us move these guys to the field."

We guided the cattle and goats to the field.

Whether the Griffon's threat would work or if Soyon-chan's guidance was excellent, would they want to eat the grass? Either way, the cattle and goats entered the field obediently.

The field we are facing was not that wide.

Previously, this was a small village that probably have around 100 villagers based on the number of pit-houses.

Once they finish eating the grass, we will immediately start plowing.

I think the soil was relatively soft because it was a farming field in the first place, but with the strength of a child.....

For now, we need to get a pickaxe, but will it be enough.....

Well at least for the next six months, I won't expect a crop harvest.

The Griffon assured to feed us for another year.

So being impatient was a big no-no.

CHAPTER 6

HUNTING AND HUNTING-GATHERING

I stood 10 meters away from the wooden board.

I raised the bow while staring intently at the board.

Pulled the arrow all the way, aimed carefully, and fired off.

The arrow passes cleanly beside the board and disappeared into the woods.

.....

“Leader is crap at this. That’s already the 10th time.”

“Yo—you’re noisy! Then why don’t you do it!?”

I pushed the bow to Ron-kun.

Archery was very difficult.

I can’t draw the bow to its limit without putting too much effort since the bowstring were stiff.

The aim was off if I don’t hold it steady.

I’m not that shitty, archery was just that difficult!

Ron-kun pulled the arrow all the way and clearly aimed.

And he shoots.

The arrow sank into the ground just right before the board.

“It seems’s Ron-kun can’t do it too. Then we can’t possibly hunt with this. What shall we do? This is worrisome.”

“Don’t say it with such a gleeful face! You’re so childish!!”

“But I’m a kid you know?”

“You have a mind of an adult!!’

Annoying kid. The mind and body are two separate things!!

When Ron-kun and I were arguing, Gram-kun took the bow away from us.

He then silently pulled an arrow and shoots.

The arrow hits the board magnificently.

“No way!!”

“It’s suspicious that Gram can do it!!”

“How, how can you both say that.....”

It was just a fluke. It must be a fluke.

It’s impossible for Gram-kun, who obviously has slow reflexes, to hit anything.

“Try it once more.”

“Y—yes.”

Gram nodded and nocked the arrow again.

The arrow simply hit the board.

It doesn’t seem to be a fluke.....

“Even though I felt that the bowstring was very stiff, you were able to simply pull it all the way. And I can’t even graze the board yet you simply hit it..... Tell me honestly, are your reflexes that good?”

“Eh? Y—yes..... Maybe.....”

What’s *maybe* about that? At least, be more confident.

“Tell me your secret.”

“Well..... You don’t use your arm for the bow, you use your back muscles to pull the

string.”

Pulling with your back?

For now, I had the talented Gram show me the proper motion.

With his guidance, I was able to easily pull the string all the way back.

However, I still wasn’t able to hit.

Oh well, I will just entrust the hunting to Gram-kun.

“After three years we will lose all support from the Griffon. Then we won’t be able to eat meat. It will now depend on your skill whether we can eat meat. So do your best!”

I said so as I pat Gram-kun’s shoulder.

Gram-kun nods with a nervous expression.

“But isn’t there only one bow? It will be too hard for Gram alone. We must get more.”

“Easy now, don’t panic. I too have thought about it. First of all, I want you all to look at this.”

“What is that? A pouch?”

“It’s a hand sling!”

That Griffon had caught something like a rabbit for us. I peeled off that rabbit’s skin and used it to make this.

The structure was simple, I still struggled to build it.

“You use it this way.”

I set the stone into the sling and I swung my arm in a large motion.

The stone flew quite far away.

“If we practice, we might be able to reach a point where we can get some birds. Above all, it’s easy to make. I already have three. We can quickly equip everyone if you help me.”

The children badgered me to let them try it.

Well~, it's tough being the cool guy.



“Woohoo, I got a catch!! Look! It is pretty big.....”

I looked what was near Ron's foot.

There were five fishes that he caught, bigger than the fish that I caught.....

“What the hell!”

“Leader is terribly awful at this. Terribly.”

“Don't say it twice!!”

My heart can't take this!

“We only have two fishing poles, but the leader doesn't need one, it's better to give it to another person.”

Grrrrrrrrrr.

It was a logical choice.....

However, fishing only won't fill our stomachs.

Well, it's not that important.

And no, I am not annoyed!

“Can't be helped, all right, I'll give it to Soyon-chan then. You both can look forward to a good lovey-dovey fishing date.”

“Wha—! What are you talking about leader!? I don't think Soyon-chan like that.”

Ron-kun's face was bright red.

Great, it's my win.

I gloated that I had the upper hand.



“This herb is edible. That berry will give you diarrhea, but you can remove the toxins if you soak it on water.”

“As expected from you Griffon-sama. By the way, does Griffon-sama eat anything other than meat?”

“Of course, I do occasionally. Sometimes this one want’s to eat some herbs.”

As expected for a Griffon.

It’s eating healthy.

I mean, it was not strange for it to eat some fruits since it has the upper body of a bird.

No, would a bird still be a bird even though it’s a bird of prey?

Now that I think about it, what would be the Griffon’s classification? Would it be a mammal or a bird?

Does it matter?

“Why is the little one asking all about this? Aren’t you already doing farming?”

“Because agriculture can severely change the environment. And for me personally, I’m not really well informed about agriculture. It’s possible that I might fail. Therefore, I need an insurance.”

Those children were abandoned because a famine occurred.

I’m not fully convinced that a similar thing will not happen in our fields.

“Hmm, I see. Well then, I’ll be going back to my territory soon. This one is getting sleepy.”

The Griffon said so and flapped its wings.

The Griffon quickly flew away.

“I should also go back soon.”

It was probably around the time that I was going back to the village.

I heard someone screamed.

That was Roswald-kun's voice!!

I started to run.

I put my hand on the handle of the iron sword which I brought for protection.

Any animal's face was a weak point.

It will probably run away if I hit their face.

If ever, it will only just get angry to me..... At least, it might give a chance for Roswald-kun to run away. Since my life was supposed to have been snuffed out anyway.

I was running when I heard multiple voices carried by the wind.

"Hey, don't run stupid brat!"

"Stop it!! It's no use kidnapping me. I was already abandoned by my parents! My parents won't be able to give you food!!"

"You're so stupid! I already know it. You have lots of iron swords, right?"

The opponent was a human!

Damn, was it a mistake to show off those iron swords?

However, they are weaker than wolves or bears.

I felt a bit of relief.

It's time for the kendo that I learned from the director of the orphanage to be useful.

A man and Roswald-kun entered my field of vision. Thank god. Roswald-kun was safe. And the man was alone.

Furthermore, his back was facing me so I can take him down.

I took out the hand sling. Roswald-kun will be safe since he would be protected by the man's back. I can throw without worries.

The stone that was let loose by the sling had splendidly hit the man's head.

"Ouch!"

The man held his head, releasing Roswald-kun.

"Roswald-kun!! Now! Before it's too late!"

When I said so, Roswald-kun ran to me.

Now then, we must escape quickly.



"Wait! Stupid brat!!"

This is bad, he was catching up.

The stride of a child can't keep up with that of an adult in the first place.

The distance will shorten quickly.

"Roswald-kun, run away without me! I will hold that guy here."

"Bu—but....."

"Do it quickly!!"

When I shouted at him, Roswald-kun ran away at full speed. And with that, it's okay now.

"Hoo, you're stalling for time so your friend can get away? That makes me cry. At any rate, you have such a gorgeously cute face."

The man with a wooden rod on his hand was smirking.

The wooden rod was considerably thick. Depending on where I'm hit, I'm going to be instantly killed.

"Tell me one thing. What is your purpose?"

“I can get iron swords from you, twerp.”

“After that?”

“I will trade the iron sword for food. I really do not want to work in the field, so I’m going to pick up some slaves. But now I will have to change my plans because of you.”

“Really, that is certainly a relief.”

“Relief?”

“You’re an idiot, someone called a trash!”

I pulled out my iron sword and quickly got close to the man.

The man was about to defend himself with the wooden rod, but it was too late.

My iron sword slashed the flesh of the man together with the wooden rod.

“Gyaaaaaa!!”

“Die!!”

I raised my sword once again and stabbed his heart.

Fresh blood burst out.



“Thank god he was careless.”

He was fighting with poor physique. A tall opponent looking down on me just because he thinks he can overpower me.

Considering that the difference in swordsmanship technique and the quality of the weapon between him and I was worlds apart.

Yet this guy was careless.

It didn’t change even if an amateur was able to close the gap in no time.

Actually, the murderer who caused the murder was not a master in martial arts.

Only a person who stabbed an enemy that won.

“There was no other way. My ass will be violated if I left it be. There was also a possibility of starving if my sword was taken. Lots of adults may come if the location

of our village will be known. It was necessary to kill you here. I had no choice."

I justified myself. I was right. There was no other choice but to do that.

I looked down at the body.

After that, intense nausea surged from my body.

And I vomited.

Things that were on my stomach was thrown out.

I don't particularly sympathize with this guy. It's only natural that such garbage must die.

I only felt sick because I did something I'm not accustomed to.

"Leader!! Are you okay!?"

I heard Ron-kun's voice.

There were children with an iron sword before me.

Roswald-kun seems to be fine too.

"I'm okay. I'm alright."

Soon after I finished speaking, I fainted.



I don't know my parent's faces.

My guardians were the teachers at the orphanage.

Occasionally, when I see a child who cries because they want to see their parents, I felt lonely.

It's not that I want to meet them.

Why would my parents abandon me?

Was it economical not raising me?

Or was my mother a minor?

Was I a child of someone that was raped?

Either way, the excuse I made when I killed the man was probably the same when they abandoned me.

After all, a child of a frog will still be a frog.



“Uuh..... Where am I?”

“!!! Almis is awake!!”

I heard Tetora-chan’s loud voice.

What’s happening? It’s so noisy. Just let me sleep a bit more.

The children gathered around while making a rustling sound.

“What is it? You’re all panicking.”

“Leader was asleep for three days.”

Three days?

Why did I sleep so much.....

Ah, I see. It’s because I killed a person.

And so I fainted, huh?

Even though I remembered it, I didn’t feel nauseous.

Three days, It might have been enough to restore my mind.

“Nii-san! Are you alright?”

Roswald-kun looked into my face.

Nii-san huh..... Sounds good.

“I’m fine, thank you. I’m sorry for making you worry.”

I patted Roswald-kun’s head.

Roswald-kun jumped into my chest while crying.

“I was so worried about you! I think it’s my fault if Nii-san died..... So!!”

“I’m really sorry. Because I only did something I wasn’t accustomed to, I was tired. I can probably start working today.”

I continued patting Roswald-kun’s head.

If possible, I want them to call me father.....

CHAPTER 7

ENCOUNTER

“And that’s what had happened.”

“That was tough. Well, you don’t have to really worry about it. It’s not only humans that kill their fellow species. Besides, human life is similar to the ants. Maybe it’ll bother you less if you just think of it just like normal food.”

“I understand what you are saying but..... Humans are not easily comprehensible.”

I didn’t particularly think that I feel sorry for that man, I didn’t even felt any regret killing him.

Given a similar situation again, I would probably kill him again in the end.

However, there was an unspeakable discomfort.

Was this the result of the so-called moral compass?

“Hmm, little one will be fine. Killing the same species and not getting any discomfort would be an aberrant. A child raised by an aberrant would be an aberrant. However, don’t lose your way, because it would be such a waste.”

The Griffon snorted as it said that.

“By the way, did you only come to report such things?”

“No, not exactly..... I want you to take a quick look at this.”

I showed it a wooden branch that I brought.

The thick branch was as big as an adult’s arm.

I snapped it in two in front of the Griffon.

“So what?”

“Can’t you see it’s really strange? How can a 10-year-old kid have a herculean

strength!!”

“Really? But this one have seen a certain clan, which was only a human, that was able cut down a tree with one hand.”

“There’s absolutely no way that kind of person existed.”

Isn’t that some kind of an orc or a troll?

However, I don’t know whether an orc or a troll existed on this world.

“Please be assured, those guys have left this land 3000 years ago. It seems there was one to the north and another to the west.”

“Then it’s a relief.”

If those guys come over, no matter how much I thought about it, I don’t feel courageous enough to win.

“So, did you just come to show off your marvelous strength?”

“No, it’s not like that. I came to ask why I suddenly have herculean strength.”

I was just a normal 10-year-old child until recently.

And then I have this herculean strength now.

Thinking about it now, I had this uncomfortable feeling gradually increasing ever since we traded the iron sword for iron farming tools..... It’s like a hunch.

But after I woke up, everything changed completely.

That’s why I came to the Griffon, which had lived for several thousand years, as it might know something about this strange event.

“Isn’t it little one’s body? If you don’t understand it, how would I be able to understand it? Oh well, if I presume an answer, it seems to be a divine blessing. If it’s a miracle from the old days, it will always be a divine blessing.”

If it’s a miracle..... that’s an appropriate way to call divine blessings.

“Isn’t little one a Lost Person? Then it’s only natural you would be holding to at least one divine blessing. This one had met all the Lost People, and all of them have a divine

blessing. Still, this is surprising. I thought that since you were reincarnated, your divine blessing should be something related to your soul but..... a physical ability type, huh? Well, it doesn't matter when it comes to divine blessings."

"Does that mean I can have multiple divine blessings?"

I don't understand well how rare are divine blessings, but the Griffon in front of me seems to hold several divine blessings. So then, it wouldn't be strange that I will have multiple divine blessings, right?

"Divine blessing holders are divided into two types. Single Divine Blessing holder, and Multiple Divine Blessing holder. Never seen anyone that was able to hold more than two or three divine blessings. Other than little one's herculean strength, I don't sense any other divine blessing. So your assumption is impossible."

Damn, that's not what I want to hear.

I don't particularly like to be lumped together with those cheat-type bastards. It would defeat the purpose of making an effort.

I'm not disappointed at all!

Haa.....

"Are you done with what you want to say?"

"Yeah. I failed to fully understand it, but I have to reflect on this alone."

I left the den of the Griffon.



"Say *Good morning* when I give the signal. As I will stop *Divine Blessing of Language* while you're trying to say it.

"wrtetwerwqwwjo."

"wrteeewzwwja."

When I tried to imitate Tetora's sound, she grimaced.

"Your pronunciation was different. It was around in the middle and at the end. Please listen to it carefully."

Tetora once again said good morning while hearing it from this world's language.
And I said it once again as I pay attention to the accent on the middle and last part.

"That tone, repeat it once again."
"Good morning, Good morning"

Today I was learning this world's language.

Sometimes I forgot that I can talk to Tetora-chan using the *Divine Blessing of Language*.

In other words, without the divine blessing, I can't do anything at all.

Furthermore, this blessing was loaned to me. That means it was not strange that I will lose my fluency at any time.

Of course, it would be a problem if I lose my ability to communicate with them.

Therefore, I asked Tetora to teach me like this.

By the way, I chose Tetora because she was the only one that was able to do honorific, humble, and polite language.

It was a mystery why Tetora was able to do it.

But for now, it's an inconsequential mystery.

This was quite difficult.

Because the pronunciation doesn't resemble either Japanese or English, it was not easy to improve.

If I keep repeating it for a number years, will I be able to speak it properly?

At least, I don't have to speak English.

"Hey leader, what are you doing?"

"It's language practice."

I answered Ron's questions. Ron looks puzzled.

It can't be helped then, I explained the *Divine Blessing of Language*, and Ron finally

understood. Don't you sometimes take these things for granted? I know how it feels.

"Hey Tetora, why don't you teach me too?"

"But can't you already speak normally?"

"My polite speech is weak."

Ron scratched his head in shame.

"You're worrying about that? Is it gonna rain tomorrow.....? Was the preparation for the turnip that we sowed ready?"

"You see, I'm the assistant leader, right? In any event, I want my speech to be proper too!"

At the same time Ron said it, an angry voice resounded.

"Oy! I'm the assistant leader!!"

It was Roswald.

"What did you say!? Didn't you already put the leader in a dangerous situation?"

"Shut up! I'm stronger than you when it comes to sword practice!!"

"Such misjudgment. You can't even beat the leader."

"Even so, I know I'm more competent than you. Right, Nii-san?"

"I'm the assistant leader, right? Leader?"

What are these guys doing!?

An assistant leader would not be selected by their swordsmanship skills. Or more precisely, it would really be risky if I assign any of the two to be an assistant leader.

"Then both of you needs to learn proper speech. Whoever learns it properly first would be the assistant leader."

When I said so, both approached Tetora.

"Teach us quickly!!"

"Wait. I'm still the middle of teaching Almis."

As they were fighting each other, one by one the children began to gather.

“U—umm..... I want to be an assistant leader too!”

“Me too, me too!!”

Gram and Soy়on insisted in a loud voice.

Eventually, it has been decided that every day there would be a time for us to do a group study.

“What?”

“No, it’s nothing.”

However, in reality, Miss Tetora was the assistant leader.



It was during that night.

I woke up feeling some discomfort on my face.

When I opened my eyes, several butterflies (or moth) were fluttering.

Furthermore, one of the butterflies was emitting a green color. It was eerie.

After I was fully awake, the butterflies were fluttering towards the entrance of the pit-house.

Feeling relieved, I closed my eyes.

I soon as I did that, my nose felt uncomfortable. When I opened my eyes, it met the butterfly's eyes. The butterfly fluttered again towards the entrance.

It went on for another 5 times before I realized.

“Are you inviting me?”

As if acknowledging, the butterfly continued to go outside.

.....Seems like I won't be able to sleep until I follow it.

I attached my iron to my hip and followed the butterfly.



"Where the hell are you leading me on?"

An hour had passed since I started following the butterfly.

It was only the moonlight and the green luminescence of the butterfly's scales that showed me the way.

"Just wait a minute. I'm going to mark something."

Every time I took 10 steps, I mark a tree with a sword. There would be a possibility that the monster butterfly would make me a lost child..... I don't think so, but I may really lose my way back home.

I was already following for quite a while, and then I was out of the woods.

A small lake appeared before me.

The water on the lake was being illuminated by the moonlight and it induced some fear while being mysterious.

Suddenly, something caught my eye at the opposite side of the lake.

There was a young lady with purple red (lavender) hair.

It seems she was sleeping with her back resting on the tree.

The butterfly with green luminescence went to the girl and stayed on her hair.

The girl stood up the same time the green luminescence went out.

Her lavender hair was illuminated by the moonlight.

She had a beautiful and mysterious figure.

She was like the moon and lake goddess.

“Nice to meet you..... was that the correct way to say it? Griffon’s messenger-sama.

The girl laughed in a mischievous way.

CHAPTER 8

PURPLE RED COLOR [LAVENDER]

“You are?”

“Julia. What is your name?”

“I am..... Almis. Is the butterfly your friend?”

“Friend? Hmm, it does feel like it.”

“It’s quite intelligent. It seems to understand my words.”

When I said so, Julia looked perplexed.

And she began to burst out in laughter.

What the hell.....

“Hehe, butterflies can’t have such intelligence. I just borrowed its body.”

“Borrowed?”

“Don’t you know the story about how a high-ranking sorcerer transfers their soul to an animal?”

I definitely didn’t know. I don’t even understood magic itself.

“So, why did you call me?”

“I think that I would like to hear a bit about your story. How did you curry favor with the Griffon? What agreement did you make?”

“There was no particular agreement. Rather, that fellow requested for help.”

I explained it to Julia while hiding the fact that I was reincarnated.

Julia had a surprised look on her face.

“Really..... However, I learned that when you enter Romano Forest, the Griffon will devour you. Actually, it seemed a curse came upon to the previous people of that village that tried to cultivate something near the forest, a plague had spread. So how come the Griffon was compassionate to all of you?”

"Who knows? However, don't you agree that we may sometimes help a butterfly that got tangled in the spider's web?"

I don't have to needlessly involve her about the village.

It's not worth it, considering the village will be hijacked if it was inundated by a wave of new people.

The Griffon may change its mind if plenty of people would arrive.

"Then why were you the leader?"

"I don't know. I thought I was worthy of it."

"Hmm."

Julia expressed a look of dissatisfaction. Her questions were not cleared away.

But the dissatisfied look went away immediately. And I thought I saw her expression was somewhat mischievous.

Julia's right eye dimly illuminated.

"Do you get it? Are you satisfied now?

What the hell was that?

"Next, you may ask me a question."

"Then, what are you?"

"Didn't I already said I'm Julia?"

I already know your name.

But, it's unlikely she would tell me what she really is. Can't be help then. Well then.....

"I want you to tell me about magic. Slowly from the beginning."

"I don't really mind but..... it's really simple. It is caused by the mysterious power of the spirit. You can heal wounds and vitality, conversely, you can hurt someone, and predict disaster."

"Can you conjure fire?"

"It's possible. However, a magic that can directly damage the person's flesh is quite difficult. It's even difficult for me."

Difficult for her too, she said.....

But it's amazingly appealing that I want it.

At any rate, that was a simple explanation. Magic, can't it reproduce spells such as Meteo or Gigadein?

I mean it's called Ma-gic.....

Malicious curses had a gloomy image.

Be as it may, was this young lady a magician too? Does someone with such a cute face be able to curse someone to death?

That reminds me, that Griffon told me that the famine was caused by a curse.

Should I ask her if there was a rare expert that was able to do it?

"What do you think caused the famine?"

"It's definitely a curse. It was a curse that specifically targeted crops. Although it was difficult to kill a person or an animal with a curse, killing plants was relatively easy."

As Julia said so, she kneeled and pulled up some weeds and showed it to me.

Julia then breathed on the weed, the color changed to black and it died.

"Just like that."

"Who would do something like that, like cursing the crops?"

If there was no curse, the children wouldn't have been abandoned.

I could accept it if it was a natural disaster, but if it was a deliberate action by a human, it irritates me just thinking about it.

"Who was it? Actually rather than that, the proper question is, which country? It is impossible for an individual to do such a large-scale spell. Even with 100 magicians without using any sacrifice, I think it's impossible. It was the Romano Forest, a small country in the south, and the countries of King Domagal & Gilberd to the north that was affected. Considering that the country of King Faludam was not affected, you might think he was the mastermind behind it, but the king completely denies it. For me, I think the real mastermind is the country to the north of King Faludam's country."

So they got themselves messily tangled with King ○○ or King □□.

~Being the King of a country sounds like too much work ~it'd be better just living in a peaceful country.

Doesn't that idea exist here?

Or was there a country that doesn't involve themselves in war? Or does the name of the country changes when the ruling king change?

In ancient Japan too, the capital change every time there was a new emperor.

No, wait a minute.

Perhaps, it may be the royal family. No, it's definitely the royal family. I'm sure.

"Are you done with your questions now?"

"Yeah, I'm done asking. How about you? I still have various necessary fieldwork that I have to do tomorrow."

And so our discussion had come to an end.

"Nah, I'm good. By the way, isn't today a full moon? So, on the next full moon, won't you come here again?"

"Why? You have already seen my face and our business here is done."

"I want to know more about you."

Why is it?

Is she perhaps trying to seduce me?

Have I become more popular after dying!? ——

“What do I get out of this?”

“Won’t you be able to get chummy with a cute girl this way?”

“Tha— that’s ridiculous. How can a brat of around 10 years old say that?”

Sorry but I’m not a lolicon.

But I’m currently 10 years old right now, so it might not be really considered as Lolicon, but even we disregard that, I don’t get any sexual desire to such a child.

“So, what is good for you?”

“Teach me about magic, how about it?”

Julia frowned when I suggested that.

“You have to know men can’t do magic.”

“Why is that?”

“Men and women have different spirit quality. A man learning magic is as bizarre as a woman learning swordsmanship.”

Really.....

I see. So was that the reason the sex ratio of the children were 50-50?

Because girls can use magic to some extent, therefore abandoning them just because they are just girls, would be a loss to a nation.

“But is it possible that I can do it?”

“Yes, it’s possible but.....”

“Then teach me a little. For self-defense.”

Actually, I’m not interested in magic nor I really need to learn it.

What I’m concerned about was us not having any countermeasures to curses.

The Griffon said it was okay, but I doubt it even if he seems to be decent.

Even if the boys was trained in kendo and judo, no matter how strong they are, it can't be compared to a curse.

I want the girls to learn magic by any means.

For now, I'm going to dance with this girl and see if she would be trustworthy

I will plan to ask her help in training the girls if she can prove to be trustworthy.

.....But, if I'm not careful, I can't deny the possibility that she would only gain my trust just to steal our food supply.

Well, as long as the location of the village was not known, I don't think it would be plundered, so the possibility was extremely low.

"Then, let us meet on the next full moon."

"That's fine with me. Later then."

Julia and I parted ways.



"Hehe, that boy was interesting."

Julia was thinking about Almis.

Although he looks like a child, he had an air of an adult.

As expected, it looked like he had the so called divine blessing

"No need to be worried since I myself had an overwhelming number of divine blessings."

Julia thought about Almis' divine blessing that she saw through her *Divine Blessing of Perception*.

Julia looked at the full moon.

"Should I go back to my country soon? Father might be worried about me."

Julia headed south and disappeared into the forest.

CHAPTER 9

ARITHMETIC

“Mumumu.....”

“What are you doing, Tetora?”

Tetora smelled my body for some reason.

Did I eat something bad-smelling, yesterday?

“It smells like a woman.”

Are you serious?

That nose is too good.

“In fact, yesterday.....”

Tetora knits her eyebrows when I speak about last night to her.

“It’s suspicious. The woman is absolutely dangerous. You shouldn’t get close.”

“Is that so? Though she is suspicious, but she didn’t seem dangerous at all.”

She is rather a naïve young girl.

I seemed to be able to push it down by a margin, though it doesn’t work.

“Women’s intuition.”

“What is that?”

In my experience, the women's intuition has not been proven right at least.

However, this world is the world with curses and divine protection.

Possibly, is it a premonition? Women's intuition is right..... maybe.

"Then i will be careful for the time being."

"It is useless with only that. I'll accompany you."

"Tetore said it is dangerous. Only I am more agile, so you don't need to come."

Actually, I, who walks the forest every day, have the geographical advantage.

My feet became considerably fast recently because my physical ability rose.

It's easy to run away when alone.

However, there is Tetora, when the worst happens; I need to carry Tetora on my back to run away.

"U..... then, there is no other way."

Tetora withdrew easily.

"Since Tetora is good at distinguishing sounds, it really helps." Pull it immediately if you think that what I say is right. On the contrary, she gives advice if she thinks that it is not right.

When it is Ron and Roswald, they ask for the impossible and don't know how to back down.

On the contrary, I begin to worry about Gram and Soyon as they don't oppose at all.

I must have the children acquire power to think for themselves, soon.

The important one is the power to think logically.

To forge the power to think logically.....

Is it teaching?

It is not necessary now, but it is useful by all means from now on.

It shouldn't be a waste of time.

Well then, how do you teach.....?



“First, please look at this.”

I write a number in all languages other than the local language Karisha, on the ground. Why did I write in a foreign language? That is because this area does not have an original letter.

“Please read them in order. Ron.”

“Eto, one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten.”

“Correct answer.”

“As expected, it is readable like this.”

Ron said dissatisfied.

No, I don't know that if I do not confirm it.

Well, it is easy to learn the numbers even if I say them in a foreign language.

There is the excellent teacher Tetora, too.

I continue to write this way in the ground.

One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten. (No matter where you look at it, it is other world language)

0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10

“What is that?”

“It is the written numbers of my hometown below. The top are the numbers in Karisha. I want you to learn the numbers below.”

“Why such a troublesome thing.....”

The children look dissatisfied.

Recently, though I have gotten Tetora to finally learn it, why must you do something like this? They seem dissatisfied.

“This is because the numbers of my hometown are more convenient. There are a lot of countries in my hometown and all countries have their own original numbers. But only this Arabic numeric numbers are used all over the world. In other words, it is in fact easy to use.”

The Arabic numeric is a very reasonable figure.

Though in present, the science and technology of Europe is more advanced than that of Middle East now, but when the world was in the Middle Ages, the science centers in the Middle East and Islam.

I think there are various things as a reason, but it is apparent that the numeral becomes a big factor.

Though it is trivial, the origin of Arabic numeral is in India.

“Huh.”

The children have a face of consent to which I said, but the meaning doesn't come forth for the most part. In the first place, these children may not know a sense of different words depending on the country.

For them, their world is their own village and which city state that village belonged to. Even if mentioned a large prefecture in Japan, it is still on a local degree. There are no chances to touch upon [Foreign language].

“What is the lower circle under this empty column?”

“It is the number call Zero. It shows that there is nothing.”

“Though there is nothing, but you have that?”

I heard that Tetora.

I was waiting for the question here.

There are no “zero” years in Christian era. The beginning is year one.

Haven’t you thought it was strange?

Because of this, there are a lot of people who think that 101-200 A.D. is the 1st century.

Why is it so troublesome?

The reason is simple. It’s because there is no concept of zero in Europe when the Christian era was made.

“There is nothing for nothing, but it is inconvenient when I do not define it. For example, here is a leaf. How many is it?”

“It’s one piece.”

“Then, how many is this?”

I cover the leaf.

“.....Nothing.”

“This is called zero.”

On the face of the children float a [?].

“The beginning of numbers is one. I do not understand what would be the problem. There is nothing for nothing.”

“It is so..... then let’s assume this is one leaf. How many pieces is this?”

I tear the leaf in half, throw away one half to one side, and then show everybody the remaining half.

“One piece.”

“It is different. Isn’t the complete form of the leaf a little while ago one piece? If you put half and this half together it makes one piece. In other words, it is half of one piece. This is $1/2$ or could be said 0.5. Do you understand?”

“?????????????????”

Shit, it seems hard. Because the beginning of number is zero is common sense for modern Japanese, so there isn’t a sense of incongruity.

It is different for these children.

“Then let’s do it this way.”

I write the number line on the ground.

“Remember this start is zero. Next to this is one. Then, what is between zero and one?”

“In the first place, does it start with one?”

“The number in between?”

“I think one half is different from one!!”

“In short, it is two.”

“Does it increase when making it half?”

“Sshhiiiiittttttt!!!!”

“Naa, Don’t you understand?”

After all, is my teaching bad?

I ask Tetora whose head was best in this.

“Somehow, it can be understood, but also not understood..... In short, the figure is not thought by delimiting it one by one, it is thought of as one line instead?”

Oh..... probably so.

Such a thing, I have not thought difficult!!

However, some of the children's faces are cleared up thanks to the remark of Tetora.
As expected of Tetora.

“I don't understand it at all.”

“As expected.”

Roswald and Ron look more puzzled. They seem to have been confused by Tetora's explanation even more.

Today class has ended just to have all members understand the zero concepts.

I feel uneasy about what happens in the future.....



One month passed after I taught arithmetic.

Children learned it like sponge absorbing water, and even the slowest child was able to master the subtraction of one figure.

By the way, it is Tetora that understood the earliest, which is addition, subtraction (in brief, I calculate on paper) of three figures are done already.

Originally, there seem to be some that are able to calculate.

Because a big difference has begun to appear slowly in the proficiency, teaching by myself has become difficult.

So, I decided to make the child who can't do it go with the child who can do it.

It is not possible to teach when you don't really understand. There isn't an effective review by just telling a person.

However, Tetora seemed to be dissatisfied. She has a look that she does not want to study the addition of two figures now.

Even if I say so, there is only me.

Ten good human brains are more helpful to some extent than one human being who is extremely bright.

A dissatisfying thing will be dissatisfying thing, though.....

"It's done. Please check it."

"OK. Let me see....."

I decided to teach Tetora mathematics overtime; the time that I had free for class.

"If you said don't be unfair then rather than let you work only as a teacher and not be able to tell at all is unfair; and I am in trouble when I do not have you lend a hand because I teach you words," which she said.

Because you thought to that extent it becomes this way, it is the case that it is taught.

"Are all the questions' answers correct? First of all, if addition and subtraction of three digits is perfect then let's move on to the next one."

"Is the four digit next?"

"No, neither three digits or tour figure changes. Next is multiplication."

However, multiplication is done in an abnormal speed of one month.

Although, the field of length unit is reached, it is a considerable acquisition.

After all, is it the difference between motivation and ability of the person?

“For now, memorize this.”

“What is this?”

“Memory card.”

I hand the card, which has the multiplication table written on it, to Tetora.

Even though I say card, it's made of a wooden board, so it's quite large. It was hard to make it.

“This is troublesome..... I can calculate by addition usually.”

“It would take time. You can learn it more easily.”

To be frank, most of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division operations between one digit are almost memorized.

I think small numbers were being done strenuously using both hands, but now it is answered instantaneously.

Well, continuous solving of similar problems several hundred times also contributed to that fact.

“However, it is virtually almost over, if the multiplication table is learned. Because division calculation is easy and similar to multiplication, too, you can learn it immediately.”

If this is over, the arithmetic operation will end.

When you are able to do arithmetic operations, then everyday life will not be a problem.

Following arithmetic is calculation lengths, area, volume then it will likely become speed and distance.

Honestly, it is more troublesome to teach than arithmetic. I don't know the unit of length and weight of this world.

If I recall, the people had defined the Earth's diameter somehow or another, and in the

first place, whether this world is a globe or not is still unknown. Possibly, mysterious powers may exist as a replacement for gravity.

“Hey, Almis.”

“Huh? What is it?”

There is still a little incongruous to be called Almis. This is because I am usually called by Nii-san or leader. Only Tetora and Julia call me Almis.

“Was everyone able to do it in your hometown?”

“Well, it is so..... all the children are the same age as Tetora. Well, though I think that Tetora is more excellent because they all began at 7 years old, and it normally takes two years to remember until multiplication.

“Does everyone learn it?”

“Ah. My country has compulsory education and it is considered to be a human’s right.”

By the way, a child has the right to get an education, without obligation. It is the parents’ duty to make them receive education.

“Why do they do such a thing? You should monopolize the knowledge for rich people.”

“It may surely be good for the privileged class, but there are many countries in my world including my country. Each country is competing with each other, but when knowledge is monopolized, wouldn’t excellent human resources not be gathered? So when it does, you will lose the competition.” (MH: Not Sure on this either)

Especially, for the capitalistic society, education is the lifeline.

When democracy is performed, the nation with fools doesn’t become talk.

“It’s sure is troublesome.”

“It is so.....”

Certainly, it’s possible to see so for certain.

In this world the competition is not extreme like there. No matter how hard I tried, it will often point gradually from nature to agriculture. The return can be obtained with little effort.

Do you think this is poor? It depends on the person whether you think it calmly.

According to a Japanese, the people of this world seem to take it too easy. According to the person of this world might think that Japanese hurry too much.

.....The Japanese vigor dispatch is getting recognized as superior in the world.

Although it work well, it is inefficient.

Being in a hurry is not to live, it seems that people who have lived in order to hurry is too much.....

The story just got tangent. It has become just complaints.

“By the way, Almis.”

“What?”

“When am I able to master your words?”

“...Though you may not know it, it is extremely difficult to learn a different language.”

I’m opposite of the children, I wasn’t able to readily learn it.

Still it is quite fast compared with the speed of English acquisition.

“How should I live if the divine protection of language was cut off?”

“Yeah, however, will arithmetic not be taught in that case?”

“After all, without one for now.”

“Haha”

Unconsciously, I stroked Tetora’s hair.

When I thought whether she hated it or not and was going to withdraw my hand, but, in an instant, she snuggled up.

This is good.

It feels good that I did it quickly.

How come this hair becomes this soft even though there is no soap?

“Haa..... I must do my best.”

I sighed.

CHAPTER 10

TURNIP

Presently, we are raising turnips.

From the temperature, it is roughly August. The turnips are growing up quickly and healthily.

Turnips are a plant that are easy to plant and can grow big in approximately 60 days.

In other words, it can be said that it was ideal for us.

As for this turnip, rather than for the sake of eating, it is more useful for putting it to the side to feed the goats and cow.

By the way, it can be said that the cultivation of a turnip was favorable for the time being. If I say that, it is inflexible.....

“Leader! There are also bugs here!” (While Ron is turning over a leaf)

“Uwa, seriously?” (while Roswald peeks in)

“There is no end to this.” (while Soyon mutters with a sigh)

“Hii!!” (while Tetora screams lightly)

“.....” (Gram silently takes a step and crushes it.)

It is that kind of feeling.

After all, the location in the forest might be bad as expected.

It is a pest heaven.

I take care of it as soon as I find it, but there is no end. I also feel sick.

Anyway, there are a lot of insects around here. In the height of summer, the thicket of mosquitos are also energetically active. It couldn't help but be annoying.

However, I finally found a breakthrough plan!!

“Look at this.”

“What is it?”

“This flower’s name is [Dalmatian Pyrethrum]. Common name is Pyrethrum.”

This flower includes a insecticidal activity ingredient called Pyrethroid.

It is a natural insecticide. Because the action is light, Pyrethroid is safe for mammals.

By the way, it is a material for mosquito-repellent incense.

Because the original place of Pyrethrum is the Mediterranean sea coast; can we possibly grow it? I will think of a solution while I look for it. This world sometimes has strange people (griffon), but the vegetation is almost basically the same as back on earth.

“I found the colony. I have reached a conclusion that the insect will surely disappear; if I sprinkle it on the turnip.

“Is it good with only applying that? That is good. Full approval.”

Tetora said joyfully. She has insectophobia.

“Seriously? Then it’s all good. Let’s go pick it up at once.”

Ron also agreed.

Everyone seems to have no objection. However, it is natural.

“Then, let’s go!”

I went to the field of flowers at once.



We silently pick flowers in the flower garden.

Though the scene is very romantic, but it is used in an insecticide.

It is a little surreal.

“Tetora, this.”

I hand Tetora the Chrysanthemum, which I made in a bouquet form. With this both hands are empty.

“Oh! Wh-why so suddenly.....”

Tetora's face reddened for some reason.

“.....Tetora-chan.”

Soyon whispers into Tetora's ear with an astounded face. Then Tetora's face becomes even more crimson.

“.....Confusing.....”

I was glared at for some reason. It is unreasonable.

“First of all, is this all right? It is a problem if I take too much and it disappears.”

If possible, I want to raise it in the village, but I have no such free time. The insects will not come if we just plant it.

I return to the village and prepare an earthenware. I put water and the Chrysanthemum in it.

“I will boil this down afterward.”

I put firewood to burn and slowly spent time to boil it down.

After cooling, I should spray it on the leaf of the turnip.

“Is it really effective?”

“Maybe.”

Because I have not actually used it either, so I do not understand. Though it certainly is effective for mosquitos.

“By the way, why do the insects die with this? A curse?”

Soyon had asked. How did you come up with that idea?.....

“Because it is poison.”

When I said so, the children make a startled face.

“It’s safe, it’s safe. It is not effective on humans. If I don’t drink it in large quantities, though I don’t understand it.”

When I said so, a relieved expression rose on the children’s faces.

.....The idea that it’s safe might be decided because I, Almis, said it is safe. Though I am glad, it is complicated. I want you to think with your head if possible.

“Then, shall we spray it at once?”

Thus, I succeeded in driving away the harmful pest.



“It has become bigger.”

“I am looking forward to eating it.”

Ron is slobbering.

I crave for such vegetables recently because I have only eaten nuts.

.....I am growing the winter feed for the time being.

Just a little, can I eat it?

“Is the fertilizer necessary soon?”

The harvest time is slowly getting near. It is necessary to put in fertilizer at this time to make it bigger.

“What is fertilizer?”

“It is something like a meal to raise the crops. Well, which should I raise.....?”

The three major nutrients necessary for plants are phosphoric acid, nitrogen, and potassium. Only artificial fertilizer provided with these three are effective, which don't exist. Then.....

“Are you bringing the forest's soil?”

The forest's soil consists of decayed dead leaves. I should be able to use it as an organic fertilizer.

“However, I should make sure that no strange insects enter.”

Something like beetles' larvae.



“Hii! Almis!”

Tetora has been clinging to me. What on earth is it?

“Ea-earthworm.....”

Don't be scared by that. Please learn from Gram. He uses his fingers to catch it normally and crush..... Hey, don't crush it!

“Because the earthworm makes the soil better, throw it into the earthenware with soil.”

“Is-is that so?”

Gram put the earthworm in the earthenware while expressing a surprised face.

“Why is it? These kind of things.”

Tetora's face seems plainly unpleasant.

“Wouldn't the earthworm move about in the soil? As a result, the soil is cultivated.”

I'll keep silent about feces. It will definitely be disliked.

“Heh~”

She seems to understand it. I'm glad, I'm glad.

“Let's gather and sow it in the field soon.”

“Yes!”

I return back to the village and scattered the soil unto the turnip’s field.

So delicious turnips can be made.



“Finally, are we harvesting it?”

The time has come at last!!

It is unexpectedly easy, because I only pull up a turnip from the ground.

In the first place, it didn’t grow so much.

Let’s raise more next time.

“Leader! Let’s eat.”

“Wait, wait. Calm down. This is the winter food for the goats and cow. There is only a little we can eat. Calculating from now..... No, please do the calculation, Tetora.”

“Me?”

“Yes. It’s a serious responsibility.”

I said so and clapped Tetora’s shoulder. I smile broadly at Tetora.

I can finally make use of arithmetic. The unmotivated children will understand the importance with this a little.

Today’s dinner is turnip.

It’s a turnip party.

However, there is no satisfactory seasoning.

It is only boiled turnip.

However, there is a delicious sweetness as I bite into it. At least, it is more delicious than nuts and wild grasses (it tastes like weed) from the forest.

“It’s delicious.”

“Is that so.”

I eat the boiled turnip leaf. It is crispy and delicious. It’s delicious, however.....

I want to apply soy sauce and eat it. I want salt at least.

I eat the boiled turnip. It is soft and sweet. However.....

I want to pickle it and eat it.....

Hunting, gathering, and agriculture move the body.

Sweat comes out whenever I move.

If sweat flows, your body loses salt.

Recently I hardly consume salt.

If there is an opportunity, let’s obtain salt.

I made up my mind.

CHAPTER 11

POTTERY

“How is it? Can you see it?”

“Yeeah, kind of. It’s blurry.”

Right now I’m doing magic training.

What I’m doing now is what can be called the fundamentals of the basics, practice to see the soul, but... apparently I’m no good at it.

“It’s not that you’re very untalented. It’s more like you’re just a bit on the ‘bad’ side for boys. Since it’s just the basics you’ll definitely be able to master it after about three years.”

“Three years, huh... How long did it take you, Julia?”

“For me, it was three days.”

“...Isn’t the difference a bit too big?”

I’m guessing Julia is just a monster. That’s relieving.

“In the first place, in magic the difference between having no talent and a lot of talent is just that wide. Ninety percent of it is about talent.”

“Then doesn’t that mean that it’s pointless to even try?”

“No, that’s not the case. If you just want techniques to resist curses, as long as you’re not some kind of super airhead anyone can learn it.”

Airhead, huh...

So I guess that since I’m just on the ‘bad’ side it’s fine.

“Curses, like chickens, come home to roost. That is common sense when it comes to cursing. It is much easier to defend yourself from a curse than it is to use one. For

ordinary shamans, even cursing someone who doesn't know magic would only work about half the time. If the target realises that they have been cursed, the curse won't succeed. You can easily reject a curse with only willpower. Although when it comes to someone of my level, it would be easy to curse you to death."

"If I recall, I believe that it's easy to curse plants since they don't have any will, right?"

I think I heard something like that before.

"That's right. That's why you need to protect crops with barriers. For the most part, I think shamans are better at defending themselves from curses than using them. Because you need at least three shamans worth of power to break the barrier that one single shaman set up. Because I'm as powerful as a hundred people, this law doesn't apply to me though!"

Julia said and puffed up her thin chest.

Don't brag about every little thing.

"Since we're not going to be getting anywhere until you are able to gain awareness of the spirit world, make sure you try hard every day. You should also meditate a little each night before going to sleep."

"It feels like I'm going to do muscle training."

"Because those are the basics. I also meditate everyday. Before going to sleep."

In the end I just have to keep on putting effort in every day, huh.

So nothing changes in terms of exercise and magic in that area.

"By the way, how valuable is salt? Do you take it from the sea? or from rock salt?"

"Salt? I guess it's fairly valuable. Mostly rock salt. If we took it from the sea, to boil the water we would need a lot of firewood."

I see. So they're valuables.

I want to avoid trading with iron ware. Because I want to leave some of the ironware for self-defense. In that case, should we mine the rock salt ourselves, or make some

kind of special product...

"Is there anything you want?"

"What's this about? Are you going to give me a present?"

"No, not like that. I was thinking that I could make something to trade for the salt. I was asking just for reference."

"Ehh, asking something like that all of a sudden... Let me think. If I had to say, maybe some kind of pottery?"

"Pottery?"

Doesn't everyone have pottery? It's not anything special really, right?

"Occasionally someone crosses the sea, from a region called Karisha. The pottery that they bring is tough and entirely different from what we use. Also, they have a really beautiful colour. Because of that, it's really popular among royalty."

"I see. The pottery we use is fragile, and the colour is dirty. Thank you for the information."

I'll think about it as soon as I get back.



First we should think about the features of the pottery we use.

They are thick and fragile. They are also red.

This is caused by the fact that the clay contains oxidised iron. The criminal is ferric oxide.

Pottery in this area is mainly made by heating the clay in an open environment. Because of this, a large amount of oxygen is constantly being supplied, making our pottery like this.

Then what should we do?

We should just bake it in the ground.

We should make an anagama kiln. (*TLC/ED: An ancient type of kiln made by digging into a slope. For more information, google is your friend.*)

Since heat can't escape from a closed space easily, it can also heat objects at a much higher temperature than baking something open-air.

At the end we block the flue and the kiln's opening with firewood. By doing so, we can limit the amount of oxygen being carried into the kiln.

As the amount of oxygen decreases, we won't get a buildup of ferric oxide. Instead we will get iron monoxide.

Iron monoxide is black. So we will get a piece of black-coloured pottery.

In other words, Sue ware. (*TL: type of unglazed pottery made from the middle of the Kofun era through the Heian era*)

Well, I'm not really familiar on the subject though.

Anyway, I can make something better than the pottery used currently. Though I don't know whether it is superior to Karishan pottery.

Now then, an anagama kiln is necessary to bake the clay.

Since this 'anagama kiln' (lit. hole kiln) is, as the name suggests, a kiln in the ground... that means it's time for some hard labour.

Do we have the time for that? Don't we have to work on the farm?

That's not the case.

Rather, we are super free right now.

We've finished harvesting the turnips and are now raising clovers. Since clovers are half weed or something, we don't really need to trouble ourselves over them.

Although because of that they're so tough that I can see us having a hard time trying to remove them next year.

So, we have plenty of time.

"That being the case, do you have the hoe with you? We're going to begin making it right away."

"Where will we make it?"

Soyon asked while holding the hoe.

"On a slope. I think that there was a slope that seemed just perfect for this over in that direction. We'll make it over there."

"Are we going to be digging just so that we can trade for salt?"

"We're not doing this only to get salt. When we aren't able to harvest wheat and the like, it would be handy to have something that we could use to trade for foodstuffs."

We don't have an unlimited supply of iron for tools.

On the contrary, there are trees that make firewood and clay in abundance. We don't have to worry about exhausting those.

Also, we can use the anagama kiln to make useful things other than pottery.

We're not going to lose anything by making it.

"Let's do it!"

"Yeah!!"

Like that, we began working on the anagama kiln.



We began by cutting down the trees on the slope.

Everyone in the main workforce is 10 years old. Because of this, the work proceeded at a very slow pace... actually, it wasn't slow at all.

"Okay, the fifth one!!"

“...Almis, are you really a human like us? You are more powerful than a usual adult no matter what I think.”

Tetora asks, her appalled voice hardly audible over the sound of a tree falling.

That's right, I have the divine blessing that increases my physical strength.

That bastard griffon dissed it saying its effect was questionable, but just that is more than enough to cut down a few trees.

Right now I have the strength of a muscular male in his prime.

It's truly convenient. But while it is convenient, I would rather have the ability to read people's minds, or have the physical strength be enough to uproot a tree with one hand.

I guess I shouldn't be asking for too much.

Anyway, the work is advancing smoothly.

Five days have passed since we began cutting down trees, weeding, and digging into the ground.

We finally did it.

Since as an amateur I just designed it in a way that seemed right, so I can't expect much in terms of performance.

Well, while it might not have the best performance, since I don't have any plans to make any super amazing piece of pottery, that's not a problem.

“Next is hand building time.”

I knead the clay and re-arrange the shape.

To tell the truth, I'm actually quite good at this kind of simple work.

In fifth grade in elementary school, I was praised for my talent in ceramics at a crafts workshop.

For my score in arts for junior high, I got a full five.

“You!! You’ve done it now!! This is payback!!”

“Quit messing around, you shit head!!”

“Hey boys! You’ll drop the clay. Ah!! It is stuck to my clothes! You!!”

“S, stop fighting...”

“...They’re all idiots.”

Do these guys plan on working seriously at all?

Ron, Roswald and Soyon, the three at the centre of the fight start a mud war.

The pacifist group, led by Tetora and Gram, gather around me and begin to take refuge. I guess because they believe the mud won’t come flying towards me.

I continue working silently.

A convenient-looking cup, and a large piece of pottery used to boil things. A plate and a jug.

Since they will be used for not only trading but also for our own personal use, we need to make a lot of them.

Shit, I’m the only one working seriously, aren’t I?

“Hey, make your own tableware yourself.”

“I know.”

Only the pacifists answered. It didn’t reach the ears of the guys fighting.

How depressing...



“It’s finally complete.”

I took out the pottery that had cooled down from being in the kiln.

It has a nice grey colour to it.

It rung a high-pitched sound when I tried flicking it. It seems like it's fairly durable.

“Oh!!”

Looking at the cup she made herself, Tetora seems to be deeply moved.

After all, it feels good to make your own things with your own hands!!

“Uuu...”

“Haa...”

Ron and Roswald are disappointed.

I don't know if the pieces they made weren't thick enough, but they're cracked.

“That's because you were playing around.”

Soyon said as she crossed her arms.

From what I saw, all you did was play as well...

“Well, there will still be plenty of chances. Let's make good pieces from now on. We have all the time we need.”

I say, and Ron and Roswald's eyes brightened.

Like that, while cultivating the clovers we continue to mass produce pieces of pottery.



“Here, a present.”

“Eh! For me? Thank you!!”

Julia delightfully hugs the piece of pottery. Is she really that happy over it?

"This looks very durable. How did you make it?"

Julia asks as she checks by flicking it with her finger.

"That's a trade secret. By the way, do you think I can trade this for salt?"

"I think that it's good enough."

Is that so. That's relieving to hear.

"Where should I exchange it for salt? Since they're valuables, I would need to negotiate with some influential person to get it, wouldn't I?"

"Let me think... then how about I bring it for you?"

Eh!?

Seriously?

"For three of these pieces, I will give you one piece's volume of salt."

"Is that fine? If you'll give me it then that would really help."

If it's just some village elder then it'd be fine, but I would rather not have to negotiate with some country's nobles or kings. I'm still a child. In the worst case scenario, we might get robbed.

As I'm only borrowing the Griffon's authority, it's not going to help me with being physically attacked.

So if Julia will bring it here for me, then there's nothing better than that.

"Absolutely. In terms of value I think I'll get one piece profit for this, but is that fine for you?"

"...I guess so. I don't mind. Then, I'll be counting on you from now on."

Like that, the pottery-salt trade pact was closed.

CHAPTER 12

CHARCOAL

I seriously dislike chemistry.....

“Hey? Is this really useful?”

“It’s all right. Believe in me.”

The children have the face [is it true?] when I said that I’m going to sow the ash on the field.

In this region, it’s rainy in the winter and recently its been getting rainier.

The rain is slightly acidic because of the carbon dioxide in the air merges in the rain.

The field that had absorbed the rain most likely has become slightly acidic.

And wheat is vulnerable to acidic soil.

Therefore it is necessary to cover it in ash to neutralize the acidity.

That’s the reason why you cover fields with ash.

Whether you are talking about plants that prefer alkaline or acidic, there are many varieties.

I must be careful in that area.(Concerning the acidity of the soil.)

This field is 1.5 times the area, which used to raise turnips.

Though there are various reasons, my physical ability have largely risen.

It’s enough for just me to take care of it.

「Next is the homemade fertilizer I guess.」

I lift the earthenware pot containing the fertilizer.

I consolidated the undiscarded cow and goat feces along with fallen leaves from the forest and let it ferment.

It wasn't ready when we harvested the turnips, but we can use it now (during the wheat harvest).

The children were saying that putting the cow manure into the fields was impossible, but I persuaded them by telling them that the nuts that we always ate were also growing in the dung that was left around inside the forest.

I thought about human feces, but I hate the idea myself, and I'm afraid of contracting the parasitical worms that might come from using human feces.

Thinking about those worms makes me feel ill.

I stir the fertilizer and ash into the pot one at a time.

It needs to be spread evenly throughout.

The joint force of me, the children, and the cows will plow the fields.

The working pace is quite fast.

My physical strength and the cow strength are huge.

Even using our lowest skills, we are probably more efficient than the average farming community.

"For now, let's stop here. The last day of work will be the day after the day after tomorrow"

"Agreed! I'm already exhausted. Let's go eat!"

"What is today's meal?"

"It's the same as usual."

"In other words, is it nuts.....?"

“How does Griffon-sama collect a large amount of nuts?”

Children talk while starting preparation for dinner.

They were rather stiff at first when I first came.

Everyone was strangers from different hometowns.

There were many children who were stunned and couldn't get out of the shock of being abandoned by their parents.

There isn't such a situation now.

Everybody looks happy.

“Let's go? “

Tetora pulled my clothes.

“Ah. gotcha.”

I turned and faced everyone.

.....Next year, I wonder how many child will be abandon if there isn't a famine next year.



“In agriculture, the difference between when we are busy and when we aren't is unreasonably intense.“

“Yeah...”

It's been a few weeks since we planted the wheat.

Even though there is no harvest, we still have to take care of it through pest extermination, weeding, and tilling.

Pulling out weeds isn't too much of a pain if it's done diligently everyday. Even a small child can do it.

In the first place, pests don't breed so much thanks to the Chrysanthemum insecticide.

"By the way, recently human sightings in the forest have become more frequent."

"Well it is almost winter. They're having the pigs eat acorns, and collecting nuts for the winter. It is considerably serious that people who are afraid of the Griffon-sama's anger enter the forest."

Tetora said with an unpleasant face.

"Will there be children abandoned this winter I wonder?"

"Though I think in the summer most families cut off those they couldn't feed, there are certainly those who didn't plan ahead for winter, so I'm sure there will be a certain number of abandoned children. However, if it's a bad harvest in the next wheat season, they will come in large quantities."

I have no choice, but pray that it's not a bad harvest.

Will the Griffon support the newly coming people?

It might be impossible.....

In our case, He's simply supporting us on a whim.

"It's not the time for King Domorgal and King Gellberd to do things like warring with each other. It's absurd to lose things like magicians and workforce for war. They should return the soldiers to farming, and magicians should go remove curses."

"Are there any abilities of black art not for war, but is useful beside curse and anti-curse?" "... Why don't you go ask that Julia woman?"

Tetora said with displeasure.

She's ill-tempered.

"Can you please tell me?"

“Then, pet my head.”

“Here.”

I stroked Tetora’s head. Tetora smiled happily.

“Then, I’ll tell you. Do you know how a soul can put into an animal?”

“Yes. I know.”

“hen the story will be quick. A soul can be put in an eagle or dog to scout the enemy.] Naturally, enemies will shoot it with a bow and arrow to prevent it. When it is shot with a soul inside, there will be large damage to the soul. You can do other things like raise flames and wind too. Though that takes dozens of people.”

That’s amazing. The reconnaissance in particular.

Won’t it be like using an airplane depending on how it’s used?

I can make a bird carry something like a bomb and drop it over the enemy force.

It’ll literally become a bomber.

Though simple, it is unexpectedly usable.

“Hey. I intend to call Julia to the village when autumn is over at the beginning of winter. Because I want everyone to be able to learn magic. Is that okay?”

“.....I don’t have any objection against Almis’s decision in particular.”

She seems to be okay with it.

Thank goodness.

“By the way.....”

“What?”

“Hasn’t it been a bit cold recently?”

“.....”

Tetora confirmed it with silence.

Winter season is coming.

For one reason or another I realized that the cold winter in this area isn't the same as Japan's. Rather, it's much colder.

Though everyone is wearing clothes that were processed from the animal furs that the Griffon occasionally gave us, There is only one layer per person. It's cold and uncomfortable.

“It seems we will be spending most of our daily lives indoors during the winter”

I want a warm fireplace.

I must prepare firewood before it's too late.

Ah..... Won't smoke be terrible if fire woods are burning in the house?

What should I do?.....

That's it. Let's make that. Before it's too late.

“What happened? Almis.”

“Let's go cut some tree now.”

It is a lucky day to make up my mind.



There are many advantages to charcoal.

One large advantage is that it burns for a long time. Its heating is also stable, and it produces no smoke

Of course, there are drawbacks.

By pure heat-to-fuel efficiency, it's faster to just burn wood.

In fact, it's common sense to use firewood to fuel things like fireplaces.

Therefore in truth I want to use firewood to make heat, but that produces smoke.

It'd be fine if there were chimneys, but there aren't any chimneys in pit dwellings.

If we were to use firewood, it would all become cover in smoke.

Well, Charcoal needs to be made, but it isn't that difficult.

If heated in an low oxygen place, firewood will turn into charcoal.

Heat in an low oxygen place.

I wonder where oh where I could find such a place?

“So in conclusion, we are going to use the Anagama kiln.“

“Was that introduction really necessary?”

Shaddup. I was explaining it so be thankful.

“Anyways, If we can make charcoal we won't be freezing during the winter nor being smoked out of our homes.”

I pack timber into the kiln.

In order to prevent the atmosphere from entering too much, I fill the gaps with dry leaves.

“Well then, let's light it up”

I lit it with a torch.

The wood inside the kiln began to burn.

"For a little while, keep the fire opening and the smoke opening closed up. It'll become charcoal if we leave it alone for a day"

"This won't change the pottery?"

"Well, the lack of reaction with oxygen is the same in both processes so it's fine."

"Huh? What's oxygen?"

Explaining oxygen huh.....

I'm not confident in my explanations.....

"The thing I'm calling oxygen is the stuff you normally need to burn stuff. It's kinda like a type of air. If there isn't any oxygen then nothing will burn."

"Hmmmm. Does the oxygen not burn as well?"

Shit. An annoying subject was brought up.

I don't know the best answers for these science questions since I was a humanities major.

"Well, to start with, when I say carbon, I'm referring to anything burnable like trees. The substances our bodies are made out of are called polymers, which are compounds of oxygen and carbon. That's why, rather than oxygen being the thing that burns, oxygen combusts, right?"

"Yeah, I somehow understand."

I don't really understand it myself.

In the first place is this a good definition of burning? Isn't the linking of iron and oxygen combustion? Is it not limited to carbon? In the first place what is the difference between burning and combustion?

—Layman's terms versus chemistry terms?

Speaking of which, didn't my High School teacher once tell me that oxidation is a chemical reaction between oxygen and some other material?

Or was oxygen when a material was deprived of hydrogen?

Well, I'm certain at least that during oxidation the substance loses an electron.

Wait, that's acid reduction.

I don't know what that means anymore.

Stop using such misleading terms!

Basically, in junior high I learned that 「oxidation is when substances react with oxygen to make a compound」 .

Stop spinning around my assertions!

I don't know how to decipher these things.

“Hey, Nii-san, what's wrong?”

“No, it's nothing. I'm just thinking a bit.”

CHAPTER 13

NEW YEAR

“Hey, Almis. You don’t have to come here in the evening of the next full moon. I’m busy in preparation for the New Year.”

“E! That’s so? Is it New Year. Naturally, there is that.”

I had forgotten it.

Anyway, the only thing that informs the time are only the height of the sun, temperature, and the growth of plants.

That’s right. Naturally, there is New Year.

It is New Year in the winter, which means that this is a northern hemisphere. I feel relieved a little.

No, wait. It is doubtful whether there is a calendar when I think about this culture level.

In the first place, is it solar calendar or moon calendar?

“Naa, What’s the standard that decided the calendar?”

“Well, was it the movement of the sun? I don’t know the detail either. It was imported from a foreign country.”

I see, I was convinced.

It’s so. It is a mystery on how Astronomy develops in this culture level.

However, a foreign country.....

The foreign country here is not a country in this area, it could be said that the country is in the point of the far sea.

If I’m not mistaken, a Karishian said this and that. (*Pengu: Karishian=people from*

Karisha. I made it up since too lazy to type the whole thing)

The difference in development is great depending on the area.

I'll remember it.

"Naa? What do you do to celebrate the new year?"

"Let's see..... we kill a pig which is raised only for this day to dedicate to the God and eat together. After that, we set up the great purification to expel evil spirit again. There is no need for putting it to New Year because it is possible to do it any time. These preparations are troublesome."

Indeed.....

Because Julia is a magician, is it even more serious?

Is it so? A pig?

Unfortunately, there are no pigs. There is cow but it's an important labor.....

Should I substitute with a deer?

Though, I have to search for a deer with everyone.

"That reminds me, there is no shrine maiden in Almis's village?"

"Yeah, what about it? It's because it is made up of deserted children. They might not abandon a shrine maiden. Maybe not."

I refrain from inquiring into the past of the children.

Therefore, I do not know what kind of skill they have.

My biggest concern is Tetora.....

She might secretly be a shrine maiden. Somehow.

“Then, there is no other way. Should I perform it?”

“It isn’t necessary for you to overdo it particularly?”

Somehow the other party had picked up on Julia being a noble individual.

She is able to prepare salt every month so she is considerably rich. However, I don’t know why she is in such a place.

In addition, she is also a magician.

It is seriously New Year, soon. The New Year gets busier than for Japanese since this world is where magicians exist.

When the act isn’t especially significant, I don’t feel the necessity to do it.

“That’s no good. Even if you are good, the other children may worry. There is faith in such a thing.

Umm, is that so?

I don’t know it very well.

“Nevertheless, you are plain to be a shrine maiden.”

Aren’t they normally more devout? Shrine maiden or magician.

“Surprisingly, that’s just what shamans are. Of course they have their beliefs. Barriers are useless without them offering prayers of gratitude to God. Or rather I believe that they revere God more so than the average person, but they don’t just blindly follow a belief. Or rather, God is surprisingly unaccommodating. Even if you believe in him, whether he’ll save you or not is completely up to his mood and how heavily he will be compensated. That’s why they inevitably become so indifferent.”

Is it feeling and value?.....

It looks like a griffon. No, is that fellow like a God?

“Why is the Griffon respected so much?”

“You should be more respectful, he is a great person. the gentleman is one of the pillars of God, God of animal. Oh, he did something in particular, though it isn’t a bad thing..... But it is certain that he has great strength. He had a fight with a dragon, who has divine protection of storm and thunder, it seems that he won. Some forests were blown off by the aftermath of the fight at that time, a mountain also disappeared and the sea was split.”

“Is he a monster?”

Isn’t it a wonderful destruction of nature? (MH: Not sure on this one)

When it is my imagination.

God [Value nature more. The wrath of heaven is necessary for the people who destroys nature. Great flood!!] (*Pengu:I think refering to the great float in Genesis.*)

It have such feeling.

After all, isn’t it an illusion?

It is so. The creature doesn’t think like a person so they don’t shows interest in grass or tree.

I don’t know whether God belongs to nature.

“A, however, is it alright with one week later?”

“It doesn’t matter. You will be coming to this side.”

I can introduce Julia to everyone with this.

“By the way, won’t you come to my village now? I will give you a ride. I want you to teach black art.”

“Yes, black art huh?..... I want some compensation.....”

“Then I will teach you mathematics, how is that?”

“I can also do it to some degree, you know?”

“Then, what is $1555+20000$? ”

“Ummm..... those numbers have many numbers.....”

“The answer is 21555. You can’t do it, can you? The child called Tetora that I’m teaching can do division.”

“Gununununun..... I might be good. The deal is approved.”

She seems to have been convinced.

By the way, it is only Tetora that is exceptional, but the other children aren’t so.

I was able to deceive her well.



“Look here everybody. My name is Julia, I am always under Almis’s care”

Julia said hello in front of the children brightly.

Today, Julia is wearing unusual clothes.

It is pure white with purple embroidery here and there.

It resembles a Japanese shrine maiden’s clothes somehow.

The dye is very expensive in this world. In other words, I understand that it is considerably high-quality clothes.

“Can I ask one thing?”

“Alright! Hmm..... is it Ron?”

Ron stands up and asked Julia.

“What is your relationship with the leader?”

“We are lovers!!”

Julia inter-locked my arm.

Hey, don't say such stupid thing!!

“Are you serious!!”

“Amazing!!”

“I'm so envious..... with such a beautiful person!”

“No way..... can I beat such a beautiful person.....”

“Ku, so mortifying.....”

The children begin to get noisy.

“...Hey, Almis..... Is the story true?”

Uwa, scary!

Tetora voices out with such a scary face.

“It is just a joke from Julia. Oi, don't say misleading things!”

“Hahahahaha. I wanted make fun for a little. However, can we become such a relation?”

Julia winks at me and leaves.

Tetora stepped on my foot while scowling at me.

“It hurts..... why are you so angry?”

“Hmph.”

Tetora looks the other way.

“Then let me have your attention, shall I hold a ceremony? If possible I would like a

pig..... there isn't one?"

"Instead, we prepared a deer. Though I drained the blood."

"Yeah, though it is killed when alive actually..... well, it doesn't matter. Then, Almis. Repeat the words I say from now on then cut off the head with a sword."

Understood.

I hold up an iron sword.

"Then, I will begin. The great several Gods and spirits of heaven, earth, and sea. I give a votive offering for we were able to live for one year with many thanks. I pray that you will watch us in the future....."

I said Julia's following words, the deer was beheaded with the sword.

Blood didn't come out much because it had been drained.

"Then, the ceremony of the offering ends with this. Next is the exorcism ceremony!"

"What should we do?"

"For now, you shall wash your body. Because, you just have received impurity of the death."

I see.

It is surely unlucky to hold a ceremony after I killed the beast.

"Then, I will ask from the girl first."

"Almis. You mustn't peek."

"Am I good?"

"I won't look. It is not erotic at all even if I look at the body of a 10 years old child."

I'm very normal.

Are? However, it isn't strange to be excited about a girl's body of the same age.....



"Then, I will hold the purification at once."

".....Please do it faster. It is cold and not suitable."

It is too cold because of entering the river in mid winter.

By Julia's reason, hot water was useless.

It is irrational.

"Right away."

Julia held up my hands.

When Julia muttered bleatingly, her hands shine palely.

My body became warm after a few minutes.

"This is....."

"It's a treatment which raises the temperature. It's just a temporary thing."

Is there also such a thing?

However, it is quite plain that it only raises in temperature.

Or is there another higher skill?

After I was finished, Julia gives all members the same technique.

There weren't any color of fatigue either. Indeed.

"I will perform the dance ceremony next."

“What is the significant of it?”

“I set a barrier against evil in the field. It will only last lightly.”

Julia says so and stands in front of the field.

“Just look at it calmly. Because it will be over immediately.”

Julia said so and took something like a folding fan and bell in hand and begins to dance.

Ring, Ring, Ring.

The bell viberated.

Julia sings and dances according to the bell.

It is sometimes bold and delicate.

The shrine maiden clothes based on a beautiful fan and white swing.

A bell lets out a beautiful sound from the movement, and Julia’s throat trembles.

Her voice is more beautiful than that of a bird or insect.

It makes one think of a quiet and clear surface of water in a lake.

The hair of deep red purple lavender of Julia shakes.

My eyes naturally nailed to Julia.

Does magic even have enchanting work?

No, it only that Julia is beautiful. She is too beautiful.

I felt that there is so much beauty.

As if time hasn’t pass for eternity.

Julia finished the dance before I noticed it.

Silence dominated a moment and thunderous applause happened.

“How is it? What is your opinion?”

Julia edged up to me.

It was beautiful.....

I thought so while looking at Julia's face.

She a vile one. I asserted that it isn't a lolicon complex.

Currently, I felt a sexual charm in Julia.

“You were very beautiful. I would like to see it in another time.”

When I said so, Julia's face reddened.

“You, saying such a straight thing.....”

We make each other blush and look down.

It was Soyon who breaks the silence.

“Hey? Please come again the next time! I want to see you dance again!!”

“Me, too. Me, too!!”

Roswald also goes along with her.

“Of course! I will teach you if you like. Anyway, I was asked by Almis to teach everybody magic. There is a dance that is different from this one to give at the time of the wheat harvest, if you want to see it!!”

A crowd gathered around Julia's surrounding.

She seemed to be able to fit in somehow.

It is good. It is good.

“Julia.”

Tetora called Julia.

The children naturally open the road.

"It is your win this time and I raise my hand..... However, I won't give up on mathematics."

"Fufu. It is good. I'll catch up with you immediately and defeat you."

They look angrily at each other.

And they begin to laugh.

Suddenly, both children's eyes became points. (*TL: like this (◑—◑)*)

"My best regards."

"Same here."

The two children shook hands with each other.

.....I don't understand it well, but a friendship seems to have been established.

CHAPTER 14

WHEAT

The main characters look skillful with their hands.

There are ten children before my eyes.

Four people are about 4-years-old, while the remaining six people are approximately 8-years-old.

In short, they are abandoned children..... What with this timing?

Moreover, January, they couldn't endure until February?

If it's so serious that you can't endure, shouldn't they be thrown away in winter?

"There are 2 times to leave a child. First is wheat harvest season. In case of a bad harvest, the village chief elects them with authority. The second time is after New Year. If I'm not mistaken in my calculation, when you have to throw away more of them. It's slow because it seems not being able to get over the late winter and I understand at last. This is the desire of the parents that they want to send them off after New Year celebration."

"I see. Thank you for your explanation."

I assign the houses to the children after hearing their name.

If a life can be helped then I will help them.

As for the Griffon, he will support us until we finish harvesting wheat, so it is all right.

I will return him next year, if it is a good harvest.

"Hey, Almis."

"What is it?"

"Is wheat enough? There are around 50 people to prepare for next year if it is a bad harvest."

If I follow Tetra's reason, the storage will run dry after 2 years.

Will growing wheat suffice for now? That's Tetra's question.

"It is alright. Let's make manure to grow the wheat. It is possible to harvest more than usual. The field was made quite wide too. In addition, we will also be raising barley."

In this region, 2 fields system is the mainstream.

In brief, one field rests for one year, if we harvest wheat.

It is a bad efficiency to produce food.

On the other hand, we are doing a crop rotation agriculture. The production efficiency is entirely different.

Tetra's worry is imaginary fears.

"However, isn't it impossible for two years?"

"I don't understand. But the people that needed set up enchantments are a large group of highly skilled magicians, people who have financial power as sacrifice can be prepared. Therefore, there might be a second year. However..."

"But?"

"Is Rosaith king country different?"

King Rosaith's country..... it is a mid-size nation in the south side of Roman's forest.

"Can you assert that there are no larger countries and King Rosaith's country is peaceful?"

"Because there is Julia."

Is Julia a citizen of Rosaith King's country? I haven't heard of it.

Tetra looks at my face and answers.

"She is considered a celebrity."

"Although it seemed like it was the other children's first time meeting her?"

".....Among the people from the upper class. There is a story. She is 12-years-old in

this new year. She began to work as Rosaith's magician."

Is Julia 12-years-old?.....

"I, would it be alright for me to change the setting making me 12-years-old instead of 11-years-old?"

".....Do what you please." (I don't care anymore.)

Good. I'm 12-years-old from now on.

I don't know my accurate age anyway. It doesn't matter if it is 11 or 12-years-old.

In reality, I have exceeded 20-years-old.

"Shouldn't you think of it as an increase in labor? The harvest could rise. It is old people that I'm more worried about. To make old people work....."

Their efficiency is not so good.

It will be all about free meal.

"Old people don't get abandoned so much."

"Why is it?"

".....There are about eight children, but none that have a mother and father"

I agree.

"In the first place, you die when you reach roughly 50 years old. Because long lived elder people, who live is the proof of health, they are not easy to kill."

Are they just unlucky?

When they live for a long time, they can provide answers for the people around.

Is there more resistance than abandoning a child?

“Don’t you want to hear it?”

“What is it?”

“The reason why I knew about Julia.”

Oh, the story that [she is a famous person in the upper class” awhile ago.

“Though I’m interested, I don’t need to hear it. You can talk when you feel like it.”

“Oh.....”

Tetra looks down lonely, while feeling relieved.



“Amazing! The wheat grew so much. What kind of enchantment did you use?”

“I didn’t do such a thing in particular.”

The tip of the wheat shines golden gleams before my eyes.

Did you say bumper crop?

“What about on your side?”

“Fufun! It is alright thanks to me. Though it isn’t a good harvest, but I don’t have to worry about anybody starving this year. Father was very pleased.”

Is that so? That’s good for him.

“By the way, what is that?”

“It is barley.”

I hear Julia’s questionably voice.

“You don’t let your field rest?”

“It is alright. It is just a little secret.”

When I answer, Julia looks at the barley steadily.

However, she doesn't seem to have much interest, she moves her eyes to the wheat immediately.

"Then, is it alright if I hold the ceremony immediately?"

"Yes. I leave it to you."

Julia steps forward.

There is a pedestal in front of Julia's eyes, there are wine, deer meat, grapes, and olives on top.

I exchange earthenware to obtain wine, olives, and grapes.

"Then here I go."

Julia said so and begins to dance comfortably.

It is beautiful as expected.

My heart rises naturally.

I want to see it forever. However, the dance ends in a short while.

"How was it?"

"Yeah. You were beautiful."

When I praised her obediently, Julia laughed a bit and became embarrassed.

"Then, I'm done here."

"Yes. I'll accompany you."

I walk Julia to the lake.

“Another thing. If the bread is done, I will give it to Julia. It’s my gratitude.”

“Fufu. I look forward to it.”



It was natural, I can’t eat wheat as it is.

It is necessary to thresh it.

It is to separate the rice husk from the chaff of the wheat.

It is considerably hard labor, if we perform it all by hand.

Therefore, I borrow the wisdom of our pioneers.

“This, it’s such an amazing thing!!”

Soyon threshes the wheat with the threshing machine, while talking to me.

I’m glad that she praised the thing I made myself.

Although I stole the idea from someone else.

By the way, the comb is made out of wood but the original comb in thresher is made with bamboo or metal, but bamboo aren’t growing in the wild and we don’t have smithing technology.

Therefore it is very fragile, so please treat it carefully.

“Umu..... the structure is simple. However, it is so much more efficient..... such a great idea.”

Tetra looks at the threshing comb and mutters bleatingly.

“Isn’t it wonderful if this spreads out?”

Ron showed a slight excitement and said so.

Well the work efficiency will probably go up.

Originally, threshing is the work of a widow, however, there is no good point.

I must consider the widower, if I'm going to spread it.....

I guess it isn't something I need to worry about. After all, I'm the children's leader. If the time comes, I will dissolve this group.



Then, I have to get the husk from the chaff.

In earth, before the machine is introduced, every region threshed with a stone mill.

There are two kinds of mortar, method one is to put a round stone on a board stone.

Another method is to stack two slates and rotate it.

At least, they seem to use the former mortar in the surrounding regions.

It is possible to thresh with this method. It will cause lower back pain if you continue doing the same work for a long time while sitting down.

I don't want to be troubled by lower back pain at this age.

Therefore, I made a disk-type stone mill.

It was extremely hard to make it.

Can the stone be flattened to a circle, if it rubs stone with stone together?

I gave up on doing the traditional way because I don't know how many times the devil whispered to my mind.

However, work will become easy all the time if it is complete. I believe in it.

Is it divine protection? Is it fortunate that grinding the stone wasn't hard because of divine protection?

Even if it's useful at such a delicate place, it's worthless.

By the way, I suffered a lower back pain because I continued sitting down while making it.

I look like a fool.

"However, this is amazing!!"

"Let me do it, too!!"

Roswald and Gram come over.

.....Is it good that these fellows are pleased?

That thing is worth it to suffer from lower back pain.

"I will make it with everybody alternated cooperation next time. Did you say you made it all alone?"

"Because I wanted to surprise you."

Tetra was amazed when I said so.

"The threshing machine was enough of a surprise."

"Fufun, there is still another surprise tool!"

"Isn't it a strange thing?"

"It is rude to call it strange. It is a winnower."

I touch the winnower, which I placed in the corner.

It is the result of all my might.

It is natural because I am not a farming tool enthusiast and only saw its appearance in a history textbook.

But I know its mechanism is separate by wind force.

As long as the principle is understood, I can make it by trial and error.

It is hard to say it's perfect, but I can improve it little by little.

After all, when I was in elementary school, I was good in art's class enough to get a [well done].

I can naturally do this much.

"Is it good? I mixed wheat and chaff together first? I turn the handle."

I proudly explain it to everybody, which I practiced as the winnower moved.

Crack

.....

.....

I think that it still needs improvement.

In the end, everyone works hard to separate them.

CHAPTER 15

BREAD

The bread that we eat in modern Japan is made from mixing things like flour, eggs, butter, and milk, and baked through, having it rise with yeast.

But ancient bread was different.

It didn't contain such luxurious things as butter, eggs, or milk.

Yeast also has yet to be developed.

They were made by just mixing water and wheat, having a texture similar to that of crepes.

It's by no means inedible.

But it doesn't taste good.

Although I've become accustomed to rough foods, I want to eat tasty foods if possible.

Eh!? There are people who eat centipedes, so I should deal with it you say?

No way, I don't wanna. They do that because it's an emergency, they have too. They are crazy.

Anyway, let's make some tasty bread!

We don't have any cows' milk, but we have goat milk. I don't know if it will work as a replacement, but it has to be better than water.

We will need yeast for later.

Just as the name implies by the ending, yeast is a bacteria.

It needs to be cultivated.

It's a mystery whether or not yeast is present in this world's atmosphere, but it

probably does.

Pigs, cows, goats, deers, grapes, olives, wheat, barley, turnips, and clovers all exist just like my world, so it would be strange if yeast didn't.

It's definitely there. Probably.

"That yeast thing, how do you make it?"

"Rather than say make, its better to say you grow yeast..... but first you put raisins inside pots I think? Then you put in water. Then you seal it, and you let it sit for a while."

"That's it?"

"That's it."

You shouldn't doubt me since I learned how to make homemade bread during elementary school!.

What should I do when the knowledge that I learn in class is not useful in another world?

During the lesson, I did this using a bottle so I know the details.....

But we don't really have any bottles.....

Can it be left alone for three days untreated? If we couldn't do it then that's too bad, then we'll just have to challenge it again.



"We did it!"

I held the finished bread in my hand.

HOT!!

I unintentionally dropped it.

Careful not to burn myself, I tore off a piece and threw it into my mouth.

Delicious!!

It's not possible to make bread like that, which is commercially available in Japan, but it's much better than what we are always eating.

With this I will be released from my rough diet.

"Is it really that good?"

"If you try it, you'll know"

I carry the bread towards Tetra's mouth.

Tetra was wide-eyed.

"It's soft!!"

"Isn't it? From now on we will eat this every day."

The children, trying to be first, pick up some bread.

It was a huge hit. (I think it sounds better than "It was very popular")

Well, now that the atmosphere has calmed down I broke the ice.

"According to Julia, the countries of King Domorgal and King Gilberd have had a bad harvest, but the country of King Rosaith produced a decent amount of wheat"

"...What are you trying to say?"

Roswald gave a dubious look.

"You were probably born in the country of Rosaith, weren't you?"

".....That's right but..."

"If it's now you could probably go home."

I said so quietly.

There were eight people in additions to Roswald who came from Rosaith.

If they were to leave we wouldn't be able to take care of our fields.

But that doesn't matter.

Children should grow up in the same environment as their parents. As for me, I don't have any parents, so it doesn't really apply to me.

"Hey, Nii-san."

"What is it?"

"Are you an idiot?"

"...what do you mean by that?"

They suddenly started abusing me without reason.

What I said was correct. At least I thought I was right.

"It is true that we loved our parents, but you know, they discarded us. In the first place, even if there wasn't any other choice in the matter, of course we won't forgive them. Anyhow, we aren't welcome so we can't go back. We would just be another mouth to feed and even after that we might still be kicked out again. This time we might also be sold as slaves, so of course we don't want to go back."

.....

.....

.....

Certainly, that's true.

In the first place, returning a child to someone who abandoned them, of course can't be right.

If I calmly think, such a thing is obvious.

Rather than be given the cold shoulder, it's more likely for them to get screwed.

Why didn't I realize it earlier?

Ah, that's right.

It was just my complex I guess.

Since my parents aren't here, I glorify the presence of parents.

I was just arbitrarily pressing my ideals on them.

"And one more thing."

Roswald said, laughing.

"Since everyone loves Nii-san, since nii-san did not forsake us, but rather helped us. Despite having no relation to us."

"I see....."

It was just me who was thinking such a strange thing.

"Hey! Is there anyone who wants to return to their parents?!! Raise your hands!!"

Ron yelled out to the children in a loud voice.

No one raised their hands.

"Then, those who want to stay with the leader, raise you hand!!"

Everyone raised their hands in unison.

"Oi, it's fine not to go with the crowd you know. Those who want to go home, you can go home if the opportunity arises you know?"

Of course, there has to be one person right?

I mean, wasn't everyone crying at the start?

You were crying out for your parents weren't you?

But, still no one came forward.

And no one's expressions changed at all.

Even if the atmosphere were washed away their expressions should be able to change.
But no one changed.

They just stared at me.

What does it mean?

"We may not have been loved by our parents in the first place, or the village could have been the one that disliked us, so even though we were sad at the start, when we calmly thought about it, we decided we didn't want to return after all. Of course we always have thoughts of going back home. Besides if we stay with you we won't go hungry and you are kind to us. Everyone loves you, are you convinced now?"

Tetra said, trying to persuade me.

I see, it's like that, huh?

I was loved by them that much, huh...

"Almis-san, are you crying?"

"I'm not crying!! I couldn't be crying silly! I'm the leader you know!!"

Damn, to cry this much... ah, right now I'm twelve aren't I?

"I understand. From now on I will continue being the leader of this group! Henceforth, follow me to the future!"

""" ROGER, LEADER!! """

The children shouted together in unison.

Why are did they all breathing in unison?

It couldn't be.....

"Were you already prepared for when I said this?"

"Ah, were we caught?"

Soyon stuck out her tongue.

"Tetra said that you occasionally seemed concerned about something."

Gram told me.

I see, Tetra huh.

"The long awaited moment when the leader will cry!!"

Ron said

"Hey, wait a minute. Roswald was the one who was the most excited for this you know! You little... was this rehearsed?"

"Well, we knew this subject was gonna come up you know? It's a long awaited thing so we wanted to say everything right and the one who proposed that we all shout at the same time was Ron!"

"Don't put the blame on me!!"

A fuss has started.

It's not like I was going to cry without exception you know.....

"Calm down. I'm not really angry or anything. C'mon, let's eat the bread. Today is a party!!"

".....there's only bread though"

Tetra muttered quietly.

Don't say unnecessary things, stupid.

CHAPTER 16

HONEY

Time flies.

Three years have passed since then.

I'm 15-years-old now.

After the wheat harvest, the village population increased to 70.

We gained as many as 40 people. It's not only little children, but also big children.....
the food situation is considerably bad because there were a lot of 10-year-old children.

There are was no famine in the next three years, but apparently the parents abandon
the children because of heavy taxation, and the current population is 100 people. It is
not laughable.

Judging from my eyes, no country has a big population.

Though I think the children born rate every year isn't very high.....

Isn't this considerably terrible?

Children are thrown away in this forest, naturally, there will be children sold as slaves,
too.

By the way, the breakdown of 100 people is 30 people around the ages of 12-15-years-old.
40 people are 8-11-years-old. 30 people are 8-years-old or younger.

I cut down the trees and begin to increase the field as soon as the village fields become
insufficient.

The domestic animals are four cows and then goats. In addition of ten chickens.

I want to introduce pigs if there is room for it.....

I was refused further by the surrounding villages.

I got those originally because there were a few coercive negotiations.

Oops, I should not forget about the animal incidents.

Soyon picked up three hawk babies (larva) recently.

I heard that apparently she brought home the baby from the nest that the parent birds
disappeared from.

The hawk seems to belong to a large species, I would be eaten because they are large
size birds of prey who stalk the sky.

I told her to throw them away because a lot of meat is necessary, it is doubtful whether she's able to raise it, but she said [They are a little different from us, because the parents can't abandon the children who aren't theirs.]

I finally recognized unwillingly as I told other children to help me.

Well, it is bad for the children's education, if I throw it away.

Soyon, Tetora, and another child called Lulu have begun to show talent in black art.

Therefore, it is possible to put a soul in the hawk.....

There was that ulterior motive, too.

By the way, according to the plan, the three hawks hunt with three people.

It is all good, if the result is good.

In addition, the investigation of the whole forest is finished in these 3 years and I find some dead villages.

They're older than our village, but while they are completely worn-out, using them is still better than having to do the ploughing from scratch.

There is a plan to move the people there if the population increases even more.

In addition, the relationship with the griffon still continues.

We have liquor and talk periodically.

I want to have some protection in case of emergency.

Thus currently, I'm going to meet one person, it is Julia.

I'm going to the meeting with all the children to have them train magic with Julia.

However, recently, she said that we could meet 3 times a week.

I don't understand the reason.

I try to hear the reason from the girls when I returned.

Let's not try to understand what you don't understand.....

"Hey, Julia. I just came....."

Julia jumps in front of my eyes when I push the grass aside.

Stark-naked.

"WH, WHAT, ALMIS!?"

Julia frantically gets in the lake.
Sadly, only the back was shown.
It was a beautiful pure white back.
There is one thing to worry about.

“Naa, what is the small character on your shoulder?”
“E!? Oh, this is a sacred letter.”

The sacred letter is the same character used in the ceremony..... It looks like a picture.
The feeling is 70% picture and 30% letter. It has a very complex shape.
There is no practicality.

“Is it enchantment?”
“Yes. Everybody carves it when one turns five-years-old. However, it has little to no effect. By the way, the tattoo is difference since it shines when the person carves it.”
“However, none of the children have them?”
“The reason is only some magician can carve it. You must be some influential person.”

I see.
In other words, this fellow has been carved means that this guy's birth place is considerably in a high position?

“I wish I have one, too.”
“Ahahahaha. If Almis comes to my country, I can make it happen.”
“It is an impossible proposition.”

However, it is so at the moment.
The village has to be fixed someday if the population of the village increases. It would be bad if I got attached to some big country.
It would be an opportunity to be deceived for the time being.

I must make a lot of acquaintances, if I seriously consider to go to Julia's place.

"...Or rather, how long are you going to keep staring at me?"

"Ah, I'm sorry."

I turn my back.

Water and the sound of clothes rubbing against skin is audible for a few minutes.

Julia has considerably become a woman at the age of 15.

To be specific, her chest.

My son begins to show some reactions recently.

By the way, Tetora's boobs is top quality. There are no small breasts. There are no mistakes there. I will be killed if I make a mistake.

"Almis. I changed my clothes. You can turn back."

At last, she gave out the permission.

"Hey, why are you taking a bath here?"

"No, I made a blunder because you found me today. It seems like it's become a game of tag. Though you managed to tangent it somehow, but you are drenched in sweat. I felt that having to meet with Almis like this is, you know..."

That is considerably serious.

I mean it is more mysterious not to be found for these past three years?

My vigilance is too incompetent.

"After this, I won't able to meet you any more, I'm sorry?"

"It's good. Please be careful."

When I said so, Julia floated a little lonely expression.

Did I make it too blunt?

“Look, here is bread.”

“Hooray! This sure is delicious.”

Julia receives the bread that I presented in delight.

Julia is considerably upper class, but still the food doesn't seem to be delicious.

There is no helping it because they have no technique.

My bread is made with eggs, goat milk, and yeast.

It must be the most delicious bread in this world.

“Here is another one.”

I hand Julia a small pot.

“What is it? This is!!”

“Honey”

Julia's eyes rounded.

In this world..... It is still early to label honey as something valuable at least in the surrounding region.

Apparently their method to collect honey is by bring the nest back from the forest.

It is the most troublesome thing.

Therefore I decided to make a bee house.

The bees have a habit of willingly build a nest in a small place.

It isn't necessary to go look for bees if you make a bee hive.

By the way, it is questionable whether or not bee stung, but the orphan's director grandpa who is a courageous man got rid of a giant hornet without a hazmat suit and put deep-fried bee for a meal.

I understand the essential when I watch from afar.

It's doubtful whether anaphylactic shock is safe, but it is easily treatable. Because I

have been stung twice before I intended to make the bee house.

I mean that this body doesn't have any problems about bees.

As a matter of course, I don't allow the children to do it. I don't know whether they have resistants or not.

"Delicious!! It is amazing. By chance you have a lot?"

"There aren't a lot. Though I only have a limited amount of it."

It is necessary to break the bee hive to collect the honey by all means. It is necessary to collect the bees one by one again.

There seems to be a method to collect only honey without breaking the hive in modern era.....

Though I don't know it.

Because they used really advance machinery, but I can't make it with an imitation.

If only I watched different programs related to honey more, it could be useful in this case.

Though I didn't think I would expect it in a different world.....

I would have checked on the internet if I knew beforehand.....

Although, it's not really going to help even if I keep thinking about these stupid thoughts.

Anyway, honey will become a weapon.

Though it depends on the man in power's mood.

This knowledge is considered life saving.

"Nee nee, will you teach me?"

"No way. We can't survive if we only have a few knowledge as a weapon."

Though it is really bad, it is important to not teach to another party who has the possibility of becoming my enemy.

Well, I talk considerably to Julia.

"Then, what shall we talk about today?"

"About Rosaith King's government..... your state politics' systems. I consider listening to the region situation slowly."

Well, I can imagine it to some extent.

"It's so. It feels like a coalition government of powerful clans led by Rosaith King. All countries are the same. Because our country is rather strong in power, so rather than alliance relations, it's more like subordinate-superior relationship. Actually, King Ferme doesn't belong to that thing."

"Is King Ferme's country independent recently?"

"It is, it is. About 4 years ago, it about the time when I met you. The masses that were dissatisfied with the most powerful clan of the time – the Asu household because of the famine, took control of that land. From that, they became independent from King Rosaith. He sends tributes to both King Rosaith and King Domorgal. That's why we haven't made any moves. We would be destroyed if we and King Domorgal's country fight each other."

Julia shrugged her shoulder.

There seems to be 3 times the difference in strength between Rosaith country and Domorgal country.

It is understandable if I think about the presence of ironware.

"King Rosaith is sick now. War is impossible. Haa....."

Julia sighs sadly.

The magician seems to have been troubled.

"However, King Ferme seems to be dangerous recently. Even if the king changes, the farming technique doesn't change. The dissatisfaction is being controlled with force. Is there anything else?..... My best regard."

"No, it's enough. I don't want to roll up in the killing if possible."

I already killed 5 people in the last 3 years.

When they return without death, they will come in large numbers.

It was necessary to kill them for warning.

Many people were killed by my hand..... I don't want the children to do such a thing.

I don't know whether it comes true.

"By the way, Almis. Won't you meet my father?"

"I don't want to pay tax. You understand that."

You must pay tax if you become their follower. I hate it.

Even if it is a destiny that can't be avoid someday, I want to put it off as much as possible.

"Are? Did you talk about my father?"

"No, I didn't speak. However, your father is a powerful person. Then it is more likely to happen naturally."

"A, it is so. Ahaha. It is alright. It's safe. Is it related about tax? I think that I'm satisfied enough if I was given honey of this quantity every month even if you pay it. In addition, isn't it considered a benefit to have in times of need, don't you think?"

"Yes, it might be so."

It is sever to not associate with anyone in its own right.

Now that we increased in number, the necessities will be increasing, too.

Domestic animal for example.

I want to increase it more, but big business contacts is necessary to increase it.

Besides, is it clothes, salt, and medicine?

"Then I will meet him only once."

"YAY! Then, tomorrow. Meet me here at the lake. Because I will bring clothes for you to wear, so you don't need to worry"

I will meet Julia's father this way.

CHAPTER 17

MEETING

“I’m Julia’s father.”

.....Isn’t this development a little too rapid?

The man in front of me lieing on the bed. Rosaith King.

Julia on the side has a pleasant smile on her face.

I heard.

I imagined her to be a daughter of a powerful clan that aides the Rosaith King.

She couldn’t be the daughter of Rosaith King.....

“My daughter has been indebted to you.”

“No way, it’s not like that. Ah, this is honey.”

Honey is used as medicine in the ancient world. It is surely the same here.

I thought it has good reputation, so I intended to give it to a sick person..... Indeed I will hand it to this person.

“By the way..... I don’t know you at all. I know you only after I asked Julia about it, last night. Therefore would you tell me.”

“Did Julia say nothing?”

“Oh. She has no tact. She didn’t talk about earthenware either. Well, I inquired about it because I personally want that earthenware..... I gradually want to meet the creator.”

I see.

The reason why Julia was able to slip out isn’t because the look out was incapable, but is because of this person acquiescing?

Consent.

“Then I will speak.”

Of course, I don’t want to teach everything that could be inconvenient.



“I see. I understand it well. Incidentally. Don’t you intend to belong to our country?”

“I’m thankful for the offer, but I have to decline.”

“As for the reason?”

I say the reason I thought beforehand.

“It’s because you are sick. When we are attacked by King Domorgal, can you protect us? Yourself is sick, in addition, you can’t even deal with King Ferme. I think that it’s premature to clarify a position.”

“Indeed. That’s right. Then, is it a trade?”

Is that a main subject?

Well, he probably heard from Julia that I dislike a position.

“There is no problem. Is it earthenware that you want?”

“Yeah. It is so. What exchange will be good?”

“I want domestic animals. Chickens, cows, goats, and pigs. If possible I also want horses.”

“Is it domestic animals?..... We can’t let go of livestock in such a hurry. In addition, cows and horse have difficulty breeding. They are the only thing which I imported from foreign countries. It isn’t possible to raise in our country. Isn’t there something else you desire?”

“Then, slaves.”

The current workforce is insufficient for us.

If there are several male adult slaves then work can becomes easier.

I may feel sorry for the slave, but there are slaves ordinarily in this region. They seem to be easy to control because there is a curse.

"I understand. How about one slave for every 10 earthenware?"

"I don't mind."

The slave is quite cheap. However, is it such a thing?

By the way, is there purpose beside workforce when buying a slave?

A slave is not a slave from the beginning. They were assigned a proper occupation in the old times.

For example, a grape farmer family.

I don't know how to raise grapes. It seems to be difficult.

I'm lucky if I can obtain a person with technique to raise grapes.

Besides, is there a carpenter?

"I still want to exchange with her highness Julia from now on."

".....It is dangerous. Julia is my only daughter. I can't say so."

"Nee, Father. Wasn't I safe with Almis for 4 years? It's alright."

I bet on Julia's persuasion.

"There is no helping it. I'll let you do it if you said that much. However! Almis, never dare to injure my daughter. You understand if you injure her right?....."

"Understood. I know that she has some degree of social position."

I probably don't have the heart to injure her.

Body..... more specifically, it will be the hymen.

Even I understand it that much.

However, I'm glad.

I have to employ a person to teach magic if Julia disappears.

Ah, isn't having acquaintance with Julia only for her to teach magic?

But in the worst case scenario, if I were to head to her place I could at least talk.
The number one damage is black art.

“By the way, do you have a wife?”

“There isn’t one.....”

“Shall I introduce one? What is your favorite type?”

What is? Suddenly.

Is it that? They are trying to strengthen our relation.

They said that they will attach a relative or a powerful family’s daughter to me. Are they going to steal the techniques if things go well?

They think it is that easy?

I mean Tetra is scary. I’ll be killed.

But, how do I decline it?.....

That’s it!!!

“Is it Julia? Are you giving her to me?”

“That’s impossible.”

King Rosaith snorted.

He cut it skillfully somehow.

I hardened in an instant when I saw Julia make a deep red face.

Hey, don’t make that face while I am being serious here.

What would you do if you murdered King Rosaith? (*pengu he* means giving her father a heart attack)

“Oi, no way.....”

See, I am being glared at.

How are you going to clear this?

“Are you serious?”

“Now, how about it?”

I said jokingly.

It is consideration to Julia to not refuse flatly, because the truth is relative.

“You are a sly fox. Are you really 15?”

“In fact, I exceed 20 years old.”

“Don’t tell lies. Besides, in either case did you not change into this young thing?”

Well certainly.

I notice now that I’m not tense any more.

Is it because of the strong recognition from Julia’s father instead of a king? Or to say that I’m the strong type?.....

“By the way, your village seems to be near King Ferme.”

“Yes. It is so.”

“Are you sure you don’t want to co-operate?”

The troublesome talk has come.

In brief, it is an alliance.

The risk of involving in a war increases if I accept the offer.

I must defend myself if I decline it.

It is a very common problem even in the present age.

“.....Is it alright if I think about it? We have very little number of people. Therefore, I can’t go to war so easily. Please understand it.”

If this nation has considerable strength, it’s still good.

But are there only approximately 30 people that can fight?

Fortunately, we have technology. It is valuable in a negotiation to some extent.

We must avoid war as much as possible.

If King Rosaith's country is smaller than King Ferme's country, I accept it with pleasure.

However, King Rosaith's country is bigger than King Ferme's country.

Therefore it isn't king Ferme who will start it, but King Rosaith that will start.

Mutual defense is good, but to bleed in a aggressive war seems to be stupid.

"That much, I naturally understand it. If possible, I expect for a favorable answer."

He withdrew.

I'll think that there is still time to negotiate.

Are we going to have these talks whenever we meet each other?.....

It might be better to prepare some weapons.

"In the end, it boiled down to the foreign people..... Was it a person from Karisha? I want to put in some order for livestock to them. Will you introduce me?"

"I don't mind if it's just that. There are some Karishian in colonial city in the south for a long time. I may put in an order of rare things in various ways if I go there. I will write an introduction letter."

"Thank you very much. What is it?....."

"I don't need it. Since I just need to write it."

King Rosaith said so and writes a letter on a tree board with Indian ink.

There is no paper.....

"Then, I was going to spend significant time today."

"Me too. Will you stay overnight?"

"No thanks, I'll inform the group when I return to the village by the end of today."

I said so and stood up.

It's slightly rude to decline an invitation, but it is dangerous in various ways to remain here.

It is troublesome if I was made to drink liquor, and established the fact that I stole it in various ways when I got drunk.

Or rather, I'm going to be killed by Tetra.

CHAPTER 18

1ST NEGOTIATION

“Fufu, Almis just the two of us,.....”

“Don’t stick so close.”

Tetra and I came to a city state of Karishian, the colonial city Lezat of Claris

In short, strike the iron while it is hot.

The things we brought include:

Food, earthenware and salt as a substitute for currency,

the letter of introduction which I got from King Rosaith as present for the honey,

and an iron sword for self-defense.

As I only come to meet influential person of Karishian, I did not bring anything fantastic.

I should be able to make various purchase with deferred payment.

If I can’t, then I will bring a large number of people to carry the pottery over.

I want trade goods that are lighter.

“Nevertheless, I wonder why they have their own unique alphabet? It is troublesome.”

I look at the message written in Karisha word on the narrow strip of wood.

Befor I can learn the Karisha language, I first have to learn their alphabet. It is too troublesome.

Though the numbers are easy, I must earnestly learn in order to understand sentences.

Even though I was able to master this region’s language with much effort, now I have

to learn Karisha's language.

"Then, why don't Almis make an alphabet?"

"It is a good idea. Should I make one if I have the opportunity?..... Not, I'm joking."

It is should be faster to learn Karishian language (alphabet) than to make a new one.

"That's remind me. Though we are talking about this region, does it not have a name?"

"This place name is called Adernia peninsula for the time being."

"How does the Karishian see us?"

"As barbarians who talk in a weird barbaric language. Otherwise as the peninsula people, and complete savages."

Well, we are barbaric when seen from the perspective of those who have advanced culture.

"By the the, may I ask you another question?"

"What is it?"

"I expected to see something like currency here. Is there such a thing?"

If i am not mistaken, I remember that we had such conversation.

When was it?.....

That's it, it was after the time when I met the children.

If I recall, Ron asked me "What is money?"

"Only an extreme few know of money."

"I see."

So only the rich have currency, huh.

It's on the level where there were several chikusenjoirei introduced in Japan, The average farmer doesn't really know of it huh? (*Osura: The chikusenjoirei* (蓄錢叙位令) was a law that was passed in the October of 711 in order to accelerate the circulation of the zeni (1/100 of a yen) and measure the amount of money returning to the government.)

We arrived at the port while having such a conversation.

I seem to have walked considerably before I realized.

“This is the sea.....”

“Is it your first time?”

Tetra nodded.

I smelled the salt, it is slightly different from Japan's sea.

“That is quite a big ship.”

Some ships were docked at the port.

The full length is around 30 meters, so it's considerably high class considering the cultural level of this world.

“I have heard that Karishian people have superior sailing technology.”

And so, they build a colony cities at far off locations for the purposes of trade.

Naturally, Our technology cannot compare to theirs.

“Now then, where is Einzo who sells livestock?”

Because I couldn't make an appointment, I need to look for him.

“Let's look for it at once.”

“Let check the value of pottery and honey commodity before that..... You might likely

be deceived."

That's a good idea.

Anyway, other party might think this side is savage.

That is enough possibility to be deceive.

We show the pottery to a Karishian merchant who specialized in selling ceramics.

There are similar earthenware similar to ours on his open mat.

Its quality looks almost the same.

"How is it?"

".....Well. If you're going to sell them at Karisha, they'll buy it for 30 blue coppers. If you sell them around here, then... 30 didals (500 grams) of salt."

By the way, from what the merchant said, 100 blue coins worth one silver coin. I hear that ten silver coins worth one gold coin.

Salt is around one silver coin per kilo.

In other words, I can sell about 1.6 times the Karisha's price when I sell in this region. It is a very good deal.

In addition, based on the Karisha prices, I would have enough to live for one month if I had one silver coin.

Although it depends on what you count as 'enough', but one silver should be around 10,000 Japanese yen (~\$100).

"Did you make it? Who did you learn how to make it from?"

"I thought of it myself."

When I said so, the merchant eyes widened.

"That is amazing. If possible, please don't spread it too much."

"I don't want to do such foolish thing as teach people free of charge since we wouldn't make profit either."

It is an important card of ours.

"Another thing, How much does the honey go for? I want to buy it as a souvenir."

"Give up on that. It is not something that you can buy as souvenir. It is roughly three gold coin for a container like this."

The man held a pot in his hand and said so.

Isn't it terribly expensive? Splendid.

I decided honey will be our main trade good.

"Incidentally, what does everybody getting?"

I sold the pots but the trading wasn't over...

One sells to get money that can be used to buy items that will be sold in other locations.

That repetition is what trade is.

When a ship returns home, it's important for it to have spent all it's money.

Naturally, they are purchasing goods from this region.....

I don't have any idea what though.

Since grain harvest is bad recently, it probably not that.

I mean in the first place this region is unsuitable for cultivating wheat.

There aren't minerals like iron either.

There aren't literature or art goods either.

"Right, Salt is the typical export. One can get good quality rock salt around here, and the salt demand is high because Karisha has high population."

Salt is the main product here?

I didn't know that.

I might have found some by accident if I had looked for it in the forest.

Should I look for it?

"Well after all, we trade slaves as well"

As expected, it happens after all.

Wars don't stop because small countries divide this region.

So slaves will be available cheaply in large quantities.

"Thank you for everything."

"Oh. Well then."

He said so and held out his hand.

Is he charging for information?

I divide and put the salt in a small sack and put on the mans hand.



"Then, is this where Einzo is?"

We stand in front of a very splendid building.

The house is a bit small but it doesn't look inferior to king Rosaith's castle.

The building is made of stone and seems stronger than the wooden castle of King Rosaith.

"Hello."

I knock the door and sound the bell.

A brown skinned man came out after a few minutes.

There is a collar attack to his neck.

“What is your business?”

“I want to talk business with Enzio.”

“Unfortunately, My master is busy.....”

“Then, please show this to him.”

I hand the wood strip that I got from King Rosaith.

The man receives the message wood strip with dubious face and disappears in the building.

He came back in a few minutes.

“Please come in.”

As expected of the introduction letter from King Rosaith.

Despite being a small country there is still a decent influence.

Julia has a large amount of salt, and surprisingly King Rosaith's country might be able to produce more salt.

“Hello, I am Enzio. You are?”

The young man who appeared before me said so in Karishianlanguage.

He sure is young. Because I heard that he is an important merchant, I thought that he would be more old man like.

“I'm Almis. This is Tetra.”

“My best regards.”

I return it in Karisha language.

Tetra can speak Karisha language perfectly in the beginning, but I can speak thanks to [Language Protection].

Moreover, Tetra's mother seems to be from Karisha.

It is enviable that she is bilingual.

Einzo was surprised that we spoke back with fluent Karishian.

"You are skilled."

"Ahaha, well just this much."

It's divine protection power~ like I would say that.

"Are you here to purchase livestock?"

"Yes. I heard I can come here since you deal them."

Einzo appraised me after I promptly answer.

Probably because I am 15 years old. Such a guy brought a letter of introduction from the king of a small country. That probably is a matter of concern.

"Excuse me for my rudeness but..... what's your position on the other side?"

"Oh yeah..... what should I express it? Well, the king didn't formally appoint us, yet."

Frankly, we are something like an independent state.

Territory, citizen, sovereignty. They are all exiles.

"I see..."

Einzo shows a thoughtful expression.

If possible, I want to make a magnificent misunderstand.

"Cows are three gold coins each, horses are four gold coins each. You have to pay more if you pay with goods."

"I see. In fact, I didn't prepare money this time..... I only came to check the prices. Can I revisit in two weeks?"

"I don't mind. Incidentally, how much are you going to purchase?"

"Let's see. I would like one horse and two cows."

In other words, ten gold coins.

Three honey containers are necessary.

That's just barely within our budget...

After all, it is hard to secure that amount of honey.

It maybe necessary to make a different product.

"Understood. I'll prepare it. Then, I'll see you in two weeks."

I obtained new work force this way.

CHAPTER 19

PAPER

“Heee, so this is a horse.”

“Ah. Your first time Seeing one?”

“Yes. It is amazing”

Ron said so while petting the horse.

The horse is just eating grass with disinterested expression.

“Naa, nii-san. Can I ask something?”

“Hmm? what is it?”

“Who is that woman?”

Roswald said, pointing his finger to the woman who was brushing the cow.

“Ah. She’s Lia. She is a slave. I got her.”

Horses are valuable.

Both cows and horses are meant to be work force, but the horse’s strong point is that they run faster.

In terms of transporting luggage, Horses are far superior.

However, some techniques are needed to handle horses.

Unfortunately, Soyon’s parents did not keep horses at home. She was at a loss.

When I spoke to Einzo about this, he told me...

“Then, I’ll give you a slave as a present that knows how to deal with horses. In exchange, let’s get along well from now on.”

That is what he said.

Thus, I received a female slave named Lia.

He purposely chose a female slave so she would be useful for “those” sort of things.(^_^)

I don’t really condone coercing someone into those kinds of things just because I claim to be their master.

“She seems to be from the mounted nomads in the east of here. For the time being, she can’t speak this region language , but we can communicate because I have [Divine Blessing of Language]. Therefore, speak with me when you want to tell her something.”

“E, hee.....”

Roswald glancing at the Lia frequently, but Lia doesn’t concern herself and takes care of the cows.

Is this guy in heat too?.....

Both Ron and Soy়on have been acting flirty recently whenever they have the chance.

Recently, the 14 year olds have been getting energetic.

No, I should be pleased with their growth, I get it.

“Almis! I killed a wild boar!!”

A loud voice entered my ears.

When I look towards the direction of the voice, I see a large man who carrying a wild boar on his shoulders.

It is Gram.

His height has already surpassed me a long time ago, moreover his back is pretty wide too. Not a single trace of when he was all stuttery remained.

Who are you? that’s is the situation.

Well, archery does require considerably muscle strength.

“Heh heh! My magic was helpful! Isn’t it wonderful? I’m the strongest aren’t I?”

Beside Gram, a short girl puffed out her petite chest.
It was Lulu. This 12 years old girl magician is skilled.
She was the first in this village to be able to cast spells and set up barriers.
She has been with Gram quite a lot recently..

"Hey, Almis. When will the slaves you bought from king Rosaith come?"

"In less than a month."

"Are you going to act flirty with the sex slaves?"

"Yup!... wait No! In the first place I only asked for male slaves!"

Why would I spend money on something as useless as a sex slave? Stupid.

"That's a relief"

Tetora embraced me.

.....

I have trouble reacting when such candid affection is shown.



"By the way, what are you making now?"

"I am thinking of making paper."

Paper.

Its one of the four major invention of China.

Even in the modern age, it is used as a medium for storing information.

There is no paper anywhere around our region.

strips of wood , parchment (made of animal skin), and papyrus are what is used for writing messages.

There are two kinds of paper, western paper and Japanese paper.

The difference between the two is the raw materials used to make them.

Washi is made using tree bark, while western paper uses the interior of the tree.

Wood from the inside of the tree is durable, so special chemicals are needed to dissolve it. That's why I've decided to make washi in our case.

To make genuine, clean paper, various troublesome manufacturing processes are needed, but making primitive paper is a simple task that we can do.

Cai Lun (The inventor of Washi) boiled things like spare netting, scrap fabric, and bark to make paper.

Unfortunately, I don't have any fabric, but I have plenty of tree bark.

"Why are you making such thing? It isn't particularly necessary."

"Well, not for us yeah."

In the first place, there are very few literate people in this region so it really is unnecessary, (for here that is).

Could it be that that using strips of wood is enough?

However, I expect it's different for the Karishians.

If they have such advanced technology, It's a given that they will need paper.

Paper is advantageous for trade since it is light.

In addition, there is plenty of leftover tree bark...

Since I had cut down several trees in order to make charcoal fuel and earthenware.

It'd be good to use the tree bark too.

"Now then, what should I do first..... Should I start with tearing off the tree bark and soaking it in water?"

For now, we started with that.

As I have never made paper before, half of what I do is intuition.

I think I will be able to make it because I once saw a little of it on TV.

"Though, It has to soak it for the whole day, what will we do?"

"We'll tear off the bark I guess."

I removed the dirty portion with everyone. Only the white part is left.

"Next is?"

"I boiled this but..... if I am not mistaken, it suppose be boiled in alkali."

As for alkali, some ashey-water should do. It is lye.

It is easily melt because of the nature of the weakness alkaline solution.

"Next, I think we should boil this but....."

I looked at the peeled tree bark in the pottery.

I felt something was insufficient.

"Heym we should break apart those tree fibers right?"

"Oh, that's right."

"Then, shall we smash and cut it?

I see. Now that she mentions it, There was a step like that.

As expected of Tetra.

"For now, take one out, I will crush it with the mortar."

She took out some of the boiled tree bark, and I grinded it, and once more put it into the pot, and she took out some more and I grinded that as well.

I repeated this many times.

"Good, it dissolved."

There is no trace of tree bark anymore.

It's all syrupy and mushy...

"It should be complete once we spread it out and dry it"

I put it on a wooden board and spread it carefully.

The thickness must be uniform, if i am not mistaken.....

It was considerably difficult.

"I only need to wait for it to dry."

I put the wooden board in a sunny location. Now it's up to the sun now.



"Its light and solid. This is fantastic."

Ron said so while touching the paper.

"It seems like it would be easy to write on since it is white. As expected of Nii-san."

Roswald said while carefully peeling off the paper.

"Are you going to sell this?"

"Yeah, Its value as it is right now should fetch a reasonable price"

To be frank, it can't be described as well made by someone who has seen modern paper.

He said it's white, though that's because it is higher standard than that which is used in this region.

“By the way, is it really necessary? Though trading honey would be enough”

“Well, normally we could just go about our daily lives without caring. But we don’t know what could happen. Like if harmful pests annihilated our wheat. We can’t depend on the Griffon anymore. I want a means to secure food in case of emergency.”

At worst, we can pass starvation by purchase grain from Karishian.

The more industries the better.

“Um..... Shouldn’t you color beautiful paper or something? I think its value would go up if you did that.”

“For something like being material for a folding fan?”

“That’s sound good! Incidentally, can this be use for that?”

“It’s light, and it’s so easy to carry!”

The three, Soyon, Tetra, and Lulu got excited.

“Nee, can this be made stronger? I don’t mind if the color become dirty.”

“What are you using it for?”

“How about a box? Wooden boxes are heavy. Wouldn’t it be easier if I substitute wood with this?”

“However, the problem is its strength.”

Ron and Gram began to argue.

These guys have become flexible thinkers recently. This is a good trend.

“AH!!!”

A scream broke out. It was an unfamiliar voice.

Well, this is.....

“Lia! Are you ok?”

Roswald runs up to the female slave who screamed.

You run too fast, you know?

I turn toward Lia, too.

Lia's eyes were watery.

There is a goat munching something beside Lia.

"Nii-san! What is Lia saying?"

".....She said that the goat is eating the paper"

"I am s-sorry."

Lia lowers her head and apologizes to me.

"Don't mind it. It's the goat's fault not yours."

I laughed as I said so. I don't know how to handle slaves.

Well, I don't understand children either.

Should I treat her normally? What a pain.

Still, is it alright for it to eat paper?

At the zoo they ask children "please do not feed the animals paper, it will damage their stomachs" on posters but...

Please don't die.

You are important asset.

CHAPTER 20

MAGIC

「I messed up...」

I held my hands to my head in desperation.

We are currently experiencing an extremely serious problem.

The food for the livestock is gone.

As for how this happened, the reason is simple.

I didn't know that horses ate that much.

It's clear that these horses ate four times more than the cows did.

Why?! Aren't their bodies about the same size?!!

Is it just pure bad luck and these specific horses all eat a lot?

「No, horses naturally tend to eat several times more food than cows.」

Ria hesitantly said.

So in short, it was my fault for not properly investigating beforehand.

Well, now, what should we do?

「Shall we cull them?」

Tetra asked while gripping the hilt of the iron sword she uses for self-defense.

「Culling, huh... That feels like a waste...」

I don't want to kill them since they were so expensive.

Isn't there any way we can keep them?

「Um... I'm pretty sure that the outskirts of King Ferme's country were covered in plains. Can't we just take them there? I think that since the horses are faster than cows, it would be quite easy to make the trip there and back in a day...」

Yeaah, but about that... well, there's no other choice...

For somewhere with plenty of grass that the livestock can graze upon, I guess *that* country is about the only place that fits the bill.

Which would mean that we would have to commit a form of infringement in letting our horses graze in a territory that we don't have the rights to.

I don't really want to have to deal with him. With King Ferme.

I haven't really heard that many good things about him.

Like how the king originally ascended the throne through a revolution, or how all those who opposed him are completely purged of their position, et cetera et cetera.

Well as a leader I guess it's the obvious course of action, but... the idea's still scary.

But now of all times. I've already gone through negotiating with King Rosaith.

Since I've on occasion gone to discuss and negotiate things with the neighbouring villages, by now the existence of this village should be fairly well known.

It's only a matter of time until they take some form of action concerning us...

It should be fine as long as we aren't found out.

「Then let's do that. And since Ria will obviously be coming as well...」

「Nii-san! I, I'll go too! It would be a problem if they ran away, and it would also be terrible if you were attacked by a wolf!」

Roswald raised his hand.

It's good that he's fired up about it, but you need to run away immediately if you see a

wolf, okay? Since there's no way you can win.

Well, we've got a solution now. I guess?



In the middle of the night, I woke up.

「The full moon is beautiful as always」

A huge moon shone in the sky.

Although people say that for a satellite Earth's moon is huge, this world's moon looks several times larger.

Is it just closer than our moon, or is its size actually that much bigger?

Probably thanks to that, this world's nights are pretty bright.

Of course, it doesn't compare to the light of Japan's urban areas at night, but it's certainly lighter than night in the middle of the countryside.

Yuria said she would come here on the night of the full moon.

I should wake everyone up before she arrives.

Although most of the senior members have at least learned anti-curse techniques, the newer children still haven't learned them.

Also, some members like Soyon, Tetra, and Lulu are very talented and still have plenty of room for improvement, so I can't let them skip the lessons.

「For now, I guess I'll wash my face」

Out of all the children, Tetra is the worst at waking up.

Waking her up takes a ton of effort.

But if I put it off she will sulk so I have to wake her first before the others.

Since it will be a rather difficult battle, I won't be able to win for as long as I can't keep my eyes open.

Torch in hand, I head towards the creek inside the village.

We of course use it to wash ourselves, but we also use it in our irrigation channels, for cooking, and for drinking.

However as it is hard water, you can hardly call it tasty.

「Ah...」

There was someone already there.

The image of their snow white back burned into my eyes.

They turned around to face me, did they sense my presence?

It was Tetra.

Our eyes met.

After a few seconds, Tetra blushed furiously and squatted down.

Because of the shallowness of the creek, her body wasn't hidden at all.

「... Did you see?」

「I only saw your back」

「That's the problem. You really didn't see?」

Are you really so against me seeing your back? I don't really understand.

「I didn't see anything strange at the least」

「Okay」

Seeming convinced, she wore a look of relief and wrapped a cloth around her body as she got up.

「Grab those clothes over there for me.」

「Eh!? Ah, gotcha」

I pick up the clothes by my feet and hand them to her.

Looking at her like this, she can certainly be called beautiful.

Although farmwork is inevitably a job that will sunburn you and will be harsh on the skin, her skin is very beautiful.

Although it's a stretch to call her chest big, even by flattery, for a thirteen-or-so-year-old it's more than big enough.

We can certainly expect growth there in the future.

「Actually, I've made something amazing, so can you spare some time for me to show it off to you?」

「Although I don't really mind... just what did you make?」

I asked, to which Tetra laughed mischievously.

「That's a surprise for later」



“Hey, Julia. Do you know what Tetra has made?”

“ahaha. well, yeah. I think you'll be surprised”

Julia laughed happily.

I looked towards Tetra. The other member's looked towards her too.

“This is what I wanted to show you”

Tetra spread a paper before our eyes.

On the paper are some geometric patterns drawn using red ink.

what is this?

“The red ink is from my blood”

“oy, are you alright?”

“Yeah. yeah, Just as you told me to I properly washed it in water and soaked it in alcohol.”

Tetra said while showing her thumb wrapped in cloth.

Although I taught you how to disinfect wounds I don't know what could happen so I don't want you to do something so dangerous.

“Now, please pay attention.”

Saying that, Tetra neatly spread the paper on the ground, and placed her hand on the center.

“Shine”

Tetra muttered and the geometric patterns began to faintly glow.

What on earth.....

“Almis, try it”

“Eh?! Me? I don't have such a talent you know”

Unfortunately my magic ability is normal, I can only cast magic resistance.

There are only a few girls who can do magic other than just curse resist.

Right now, in our village there are only ten magicians that can cast just curse resist. And those who have very high magical ability include only Tetra, Soy়on, and Lulu.

“It's fine, go ahead”

Tetra pushed my back.

It can't be helped. I guess I'll try.

I placed my hand in the center and muttered the same thing Tetra did.

And as I did so, the geometric pattern began to glow!

“What’s the meaning of this?”

“As you know, there are different levels of magical talent. There are two reasons. First is because of the strength of the soul..... Each individual has a different strength in their soul. Typically Women have stronger soul power than men, and even among women there are large variances. Magic can only be found in a small handful of women. do you understand so far?”

“Yeah’

As I nodded, Tetra began explaining again.

“The trouble of low magical power can easily be solved. We can just pour magical power from the outside. If we sacrifice the blood of a magician, it compensates with a curse stone.”

A curse stone is a stone filled with magical power.

They are gathered from the ground.

There are theories that they result from the hatred and malice of humans coagulate underground, or that they come from the bodies of fallen angels, angels, or fairies.

The truth is unknown.

“Second is that the technique of constructing(Magic?) is very advanced. This second part is the most important rule”

Great magicians can be born so that even if no one tells them how to do magic they are able to do simple magic.

hence it is very difficult to teach magic since it's something that wasn't taught in the

first place.

the ability to breath isn't really something that can be taught but rather something you are born with.

It's that sort of thing.

Then, how does one get taught?.

There is a way to speak to one's soul.

Powerful magicians are able to interact with souls.

When this technique is exercised on someone, they feel a sort of tugging on their souls.

If you don't manage to do this technique within ten tries, it may seem that you have no talent, and it would be best to give up.

"The construction of magic can be supported to some extent by doing things like singing and dancing."

Magic it seems, if you just try to do it in your head then you are able to do it.

Though, to cast magic with just thinking requires concentration as strong as steel.

That's why things like magical encatations were devised to reduce the burden.

But in the end dancing and singing are needed depending on the talent. That's why I haven't come to a solution.

Julia has several times the magical power as a normal person, has steel-solid concentration, perfect singing pitch, and is skilled in moving her body.

"This is something that shows a magical glow using the pattern. Magical power is supplied with my blood. It takes roughly ten seconds"

"...in other words its that. The magical technique is represented... by the geometric pattern?"

"exactly. you can just draw the pattern on paper and carry it around. and since the

technique is already completed it just needs to be triggered”

So in other words, having a bunch of magicians singing and dancing is unnecessary. That's a magic that was not able to be theorized before.

while singing and dancing, magic is likely to succeed. After all they are going to such an extent.

In the end the success or failure is based on the competence of the shamans.

This girl just overturned all of that.

“How on earth did you figure this out?”

“I experimented little by little. finally, I tried this. I found that writing this geometric pattern works.”

Tetra handed five sheets of paper to me.

They were chock full of formulas written on them.

“This is the foundation of all of my work”

Where are you from, you grecian?

“I decided to call this a Ritual Formula”

It's an equation that represents a ritual, that's why Ritual Equation huh. It's like that.

“Hey, wouldn't this make the traditional magician useless?”

If that's the case, Julia's amazingness will become less amazing. Then she would just be a member of the royal family..... no that's plenty to make her important.

“That's not true. There are some things that cannot be expressed in formulas”

“Exactly. Since there are things in this world that cannot be represented using numbers like PI and Square roots. While forces of nature like fire or wind can be reproduced easily, curses that rely on emotions are impossible.

Thank goodness.

I was worried that the concept of irrational things like square roots wasn't used at all.

"In other words if you combine normal rituals with the ritual equations, it will be the strongest right!!"

Lulu said, raising the tension.

"By the way, everyone was silent until a while ago, was everyone able to understand?"

Tetra turned around to face Ron and the others who just stood in silence.

"I only really understand that it's something amazing."

"Well I guess if you understand that much it's enough"

There were also some formula written that I couldn't understand.

Since I can't use magical rituals.

"But you know, I feel a bit uncomfortable pushing together magics that can and cannot be expressed when drawing those shapes. I mean, they're different things right?"

I see. There is truth there.

It'd be better if there was some sort of distinction between the two.

"Then, lets let Almis decide."

"Am I ok? Then how about calling it Sorcery?"

Doing things like flinging fire or blowing wind, the type of magic that appears in RPGs.

Though I want to call it all magic, I feel it's better to call one magic and the other sorcery,

"I'm anxious over the "Ma" part though" (*TL: ma = 魔 = demon, part of the word 魔術 that I translate as sorcery*)

“Magic is curses right?”

Either way the dangerous part of the name stays.

“I guess that’s right huh”

“then from today onwards its sorcery. I am the worlds earliest sorcerer huh..... yeah,
That sounds cool. shall we make my second name is now 『Founder』 ?”

Tetra muttered while grinning

She’s around that age huh.....

I’m worried.

After this event with Tetra, we created a prototype of what will one day be called magic tools.

In every textbook of ancient history Almis’ name is written down.

Furthermore, the names 『Worlds earliest Magician』 and 『Founder』 were passed down for thousands of years. Throughout the world.

you did it, Tetra!

CHAPTER 21

REFUGEE

Two years have passed.

I have finally turned 17 this year.

Our current population is 130 people. As many as 20 slaves and 10 children are expected to have joined our family.

I don't understand how to treat slaves, but I won't do something like beating them with a whip.

It might be the wrong thing to do.

However To keep myself sane, I don't want to use slaves the 'proper' way.

Since they have been with me for many years, their sense of ethics have also become similar to mine

Therefore, abusing them isn't an option.

The food supply is currently plenty sufficient...

There is a lot in storage.

In the end, it was a good idea to buy a horse. The horse food consumption is the hard part, it produces a lot of feces. Its affinity with Norfolk agricultural methods is outstanding.

In fact, we had a huge harvest this spring.

In addition, we have recently been cultivating grapes.

If I have one complaint, it is that the slaves' performance is poor.

Their physical ability is quite low.

That King Rosaith jerk.....

"This is wine made from grapes grown in our village. Please try some."

"Umu."

The Griffon thrusted its head into the large wine barrel jug that I had prepared and drank.

If it were us, it would be enough for 20 people, but for the griffon it is only one cup.

"Not enough."

"Even if you say that....."

The remaining tribute disappeared like this.

"How are you all recently?"

"It is alright. You deserve the credit for this and that."

"We're fine. It's all thanks to you for doing this and that for us."

"Fun.Though I didn't do anything in particular."

The griffon snorted.

"I think you should become independent soon. How about it?"

"Though I would like it if you would defend us if possible..... well, I'd feel guilty if we had you protect us forever."

I've already been blessed with such good fortune, I can't have the griffon help me so much.

However, the sense of security that we get from this guy is huge

"Nevertheless, people may be cute as children, but why is it that they become ugly when they grow to adulthood?" (*Fraziar: Correction would be "At any rate, even though human children's insides(Rather, personalities) are cute, why is it that when they grow*

up they become so ugly?)

“Are you talking about me?”

“You were ugly from the start.”

That’s rude. I am cute. Visually that is.

“It’s a joke. Though the fact that you weren’t cute was the truth you know? Since you were an adult from the beginning.”

“Haha. Because I had the body of a child and a brain of an adult, right?”

I shrugged my shoulders. The reason for reincarnating was a mystery after all.

It’s not such a big deal right now though.

“However, even you aren’t getting support from me, you have to bring me alcohol every year anyways you know.”

“Of course. My feelings of gratitude won’t change.”

The griffon spoke with an air of superiority.

“Then, shall I have you return the divine protection?”

“Yes. Please go ahead.”

When I said so, I felt a sensation as if something left my body. I lost [divine protection of Language].

“Then, I will go home. Later.”

I said so as I turned my back to the griffon. We will meet again on New Years.

“Aah, I forgot to say something.”

The griffon said so and I stopped.

“When your group, or your group’s descendants are in trouble, I will help depending

on your behavior at the time.”

“As for that..... Thank you very much. I hope such a time never comes.”

If possible, I want to overcome it with my own power.

“Ah. Since it’s troublesome for me you know. avoid it as much as possible.”



“Oi,I’m home now!!”

Tetra ran up to me as I called out from the village entrance.

“Welcome back, dear!”

Since when did I get married to you?

“This is no time to be senile. Come quickly.”

Tetra pulled on my clothes while saying so.

Her face seems extremely serious.

What happened?

“Leader! It is terrible, Big trouble!”

Ron ran. Ron’s face has completely stiff, too.

“What happened?”

“There is a group of about 30 people moving towards here.”

30 people?

What’s with that large number?

When I walked to the center of the village, I saw the 30 people mentioned.

There were various men and women of all ages.

“Are you this village’s chief!?”

One tall man ran up to me.

“Yes, for the time being. You people are?”

I asked back frankly.

“My name is Yal. We are.....”

The man began to explain their circumstances.

They seem to have been citizens of King Ferme’s country.

There are few magicians in King Ferme’s country so it is easily affected by curses.

That is why famines have frequently occurred, they say.

“In addition, a large rapid increase in tax..... However, you will be killed if you can’t pay. I actually intended to run away to King Rosaith’s country, but he refused entrance. I was troubled of what to do and heard a rumor about this village.”

“In addition, every year the tax gets heavier... But if you don’t pay it you will be killed. We actually intended to escape to King Rosaith’s Country, but he refused us entrance. We were troubled over what to do when we heard rumors about this village.”

“Rumors?”

“Yes. That there was a village deep in the forest that is under the griffon’s protection.” Moreover, it is the forest where the abandoned children live. I did not think it could possibly be true.”

“Yes, It was said that deep within the forest there was a paradise under the protection of the griffon. Furthermore they said that it was where children who were abandoned in the forest are living. I never thought such a rumor could have been true.”

No, that’s wrong. This isn’t a paradise at all. We do agriculture and grow our food normally, you know?

“In short. You want to live here?”

“Please. I will do any sort of work so.....”

The 30 refugees all lowered their heads simultaneously.

Now then, what should I do?

“Lulu-chan!!”

One of the refugees suddenly shouted...

What on earth?

“Lulu-chan! It’s Lulu-chan, Isn’t it?”

The woman shouted with tears floating in eyes.

Could it be.....

“Is it Mother?”

As I asked her, Lulu nodded.

Lulu’s mother approached Lulu and tried to embrace her,

But Lulu brushed away her hands.

“Wh, Why?”

The mother stepped backwards displaying a shocked face.

Lulu scowled at her.

“You’re acting as if you are my mother, even though you already abandoned me!”

Lulu shouted and turned towards me.

“Almis! I’m apposed to this. Let’s quickly send them back to Ferme. It would be stupid to make enemies of King Ferme for people like them!”

At Lulu's words, the refugees showed various expressions.

Angry expressions, sad expressions, expressions of resignation.

"I also object. I hate this!"

Ron pouted.

"I agree with Ron. I mean, aren't they outsiders?"

Roswald said, looking displeased...

"I think that we should accept them! After all, isn't their reason for coming here the same as ours?"

"I agree with Soyon. I think that they are the same as us when we were in trouble. It is our turn to help this time."

The two said while looking at the children within the group of 30 people.

If anything, the two are concerned for the children rather than the adults.

"Almis. I object for the moment. Because, they are untrustworthy. Possibly, it is King Ferme's strategy to steal the village from us in the inside. First of all, let's take confirmation."

"Almis, for the moment I am against letting them in. I mean, We can't trust them. It's part of King Ferme's plan to steal the village from us from the inside. First we need to make sure that isn't the case."

Tetra said so with a composed expression.

In other words, she would agree to let them in if they were trustworthy.

Well, I guess that's right. It's important to make sure, isn't it?"

"Then, I will go to King Ferme's country with Tetra to make sure they are trustworthy. In the meantime, you guys watch these people."

After I said so to my friends, I turn toward the refugees.

"As such, I will have to make you to wait outside. I will offer a meal. I hope that you aren't planning on doing anything."

"Yes. Thank you very much for giving us a chance. At worst, it is alright for us to become slaves."

Yal said so and lowered his head.

CHAPTER 22

TETRA

“For now, let’s go meet King Rosaith. I want to check whether the refugees really were trying to run away to King Rosaith’s country.” (Almis)

“Yeah...” (Tetra)

Tetra answered in a small voice.

She seems to be worried over something.

“Then I’ll head over with the horse.” (Almis)

I attach a saddle and stirrup to the horse.

By the way, I created these ones by myself through trial and error.

I was pretty surprised when I learned that Lia hadn’t heard of them before.

Since these kinds of tools are fairly convenient, I decided to hide their existence. After all, it would be no joke if our enemies ended up using them and became stronger.

“Here.” (Almis)

“Okay.” (Tetra)

I stretch out my hand and pull Tetra onto the horse.

We’re going to be riding together.

You couldn’t call it big by any means, but it’s strong enough to carry two people.

“Hey, Almis.” (Tetra)

After travelling a distance, Tetra, who had been silent until now, called to me.

“What is it?” (Almis)

“Would you be surprised if I said I was acquainted with King Ferme?” (Tetra)

“A little bit.” (Almis)

Tetra wraps her arms around my waist, and presses against me as if to embrace me. I can feel her tension in her arms.

“That person is a scary person. Also greedy. And on top of that, he is willing to do anything to achieve his goal. But since he has enough power to leave people in fear, those people naturally come to obey him.” (Tetra)

“I see. In other words, you’re saying that if he finds out about us, it is possible that he will try to take what we receive from our harvests.” (Almis)

Truthfully speaking, there is a chance that the refugees that come to our village are actually acting as the vanguard of his plans. Well, I’m going to King Rosaith’s country in order to confirm that theory though.

“How much national strength does King Ferme’s country have?” (Almis)

“The population is around thirty thousand. Therefore, their military force is normally five hundred strong. In war time it is one thousand. During emergency situations I think they can mobilise around two thousand.” (Tetra)

“So they can normally mobilise five hundred?” (Almis)

“He killed f... only recently became King by killing the clans belonging to King Rosaith’s country, Radou Ars. That’s why his position is shaky.” (Tetra)

“To maintain the unstable position, he would have to have constantly supported the soldiers by relying on heavy taxation, leading to an even greater instability.” (Almis)

“That’s right.” (Tetra)

But still, five hundred, huh...

For our population, we count one hundred. Within that, only sixty-two are male.

And within those sixty-two, we should have around forty people who might be able to fight.

A twelvefold difference.

No, it would be twenty-five-fold since they number one thousand in war times.

Either case, we wouldn't stand a chance if we fought against them.

Numbers mean everything when it comes to war.

"Can we win?" (Tetra)

"If we continue like this, it would be impossible." (Almis)

"And if we prepare for it?" (Tetra)

"A fifty-fifty chance." (Almis)

I should stock up on suitable weapons and while developing our guerilla warfare abilities, build an alliance with... or rather use the title of 'ally' to depend on King Rosaith, to be able to request for reinforcements.

It might also be a good idea to purchase some combat-oriented slaves from one of the Karishan merchants.

After that, all we need to do is divide the opponent's forces by cooperating with those who oppose King Ferme's rule... and then it shouldn't be impossible to win.

"I see..." (Tetra)

Lost in thought, Tetra looks down towards the ground.

"We're only doing it as a last resort." (Almis)

Tetra murmurs to me in a small voice.

"What if the girl from Radou Ars- the old clan, had survived? Would our winning chance go up?" (Tetra)

"I think so. If she would bring her status to light, then that would be great. Thinking from King Rosaith's perspective, providing support is the obvious course of action as she is the daughter of a retainer, as well as since there would be people in King Ferme's country who fondly remember of its clan's rule." (Almis)

“That so.” (Tetra)

Tetra falls silent again.

After some time had passed and King Rosaith’s country had come into view, Tetra asked me something.

“Will you protect me?” (Tetra)

“Of course. After all, you’re family to me.” (Almis)

“.....Then I’ll cooperate.” (Tetra)

Tetra said and strongly hugged me.



“I see. So that means it was true that you refused, right?” (Almis)

“Yes. That is correct. We’ve had a shortage of food lately, and as such we had no room to feed them. If We were to approve for thirty people, we would end up with more flocking in. And it would be a problem if there was a spy mixed in with that group.” (Rosaith)

Strange. I heard King Rosaith’s country’s population was around 170,000 if I recall. I’m pretty sure that a mere couple hundred people would be nothing for them, but... In the first place our village had an abundance of crops. Which would mean...

“You’re plotting something, aren’t you?” (Almis)

“We have no idea what you are talking about.” (Rosaith)

What’s with that barefaced lie.

“The reason why the villages in King Ferme’s kingdom have been experiencing bad harvests is because of a curse cast by a different country. After all, it is true that my village hasn’t been experiencing bad harvests. This is because they didn’t cast curses

on it due to fear of the Griffon. Including Julia, King Rosaith's country has many excellent sorceror. They won't end up with any bad harvests because of curses. Fact is, none of the villages we encountered on our journey were in any sort of deficiency of food. I also heard from Julia, who told me that the country was experiencing a good harvest. In other words, there is plenty of room for King Rosaith's country to accept. You should be able to take in three hundred people no problem, let alone thirty, right?" (Almis)

"While that may be true, it doesn't change the fact that it is a bad debt. It's common sense to throw out good-for-noth—" (Rosaith)

"That is quite strange." (Almis)

I interrupted King Rosaith's words.

"If the population increases then that is beneficial to you. And those refugees are your enemy nation, King Ferme's country's citizens. You shouldn't be driving them away, but calling them in. By doing that, King Ferme's country's citizens will come flooding in to your country. While, yes, your food supplies will go down, in the long run you will be able to get back what you lost via taxes. And you should be jumping at any chance that will lower King Ferme's country's national strength." (Almis)

If King Rosaith's country was currently experiencing a famine then it would be a different story, but his country has food in abundance. So there shouldn't be any problems at all.

There is a divide in language and culture. If that was his reason then I could somewhat accept that, but on top of him being a fellow Aldernian, they also lived in the same country together until a few decades ago. Even if he was to invite them in, there would be no problem at all. Or rather precisely because they are his fellow compatriots, that should be reason enough to take the initiative and welcome them in.

He's got no shortage of undeveloped land.

Also, they told me that they wouldn't mind even becoming slaves. Of course, they should have said the same thing to King Rosaith. You can get slaves for free, you know? There's no annoying human rights coalition in this world. You could abuse and sell them off all you want.

If he were to accept it, he could make some kind of folk tale called 'The Benevolence of the Wise King, Rosaith' or something.

Driving them away would be a terrible idea.

There is also one other thing that felt off to me.

"It also doesn't make sense that they would come to my village. It's not like you and King Ferme, the countries that you two rule are the only countries in Adernia Peninsula. If you were absolutely against taking them in you could have just sent them to a different country. In exchange for having them being escorted by some soldiers, you could give them permission to transit through to another country." (Almis)

King Rosaith's country was experiencing a good harvest.

Which would mean that neighbouring countries should also be experiencing good harvests. It would be impossible for the climate of only this specific area to be different.

The neighbouring countries have plenty of room to accept the refugees.

Yet they arrived at the forest. And in that vast forest, they were able to find our village.

That isn't any easy feat. It's hard to imagine that they just stumbled upon it.

"I'm guessing you just said something like 'I heard that that place is like paradise~', right?" (Almis)

"Fumu... as expected of you. You are ninety-percent correct. But you are still missing something." (Rosaith)

"Are you talking about the reason you sent the refugees to my village? If that's the case then the answer is simple." (Almis)

I stare at King Rosaith, who is grinning.

"You came to the conclusion that I would have a high chance of accepting the refugees. After all, I'm such a good person, if I do say so myself. But you can't sate hunger with kindness. Because of that, I would need to procure wheat from somewhere. Now, the place where I was to get the wheat is..." (Almis)

"That would be in Our country." (Rosaith)

Although we could have also bought them from the Karishans, they live rather far

away. Procuring them from a nearby location is a much more pragmatic approach.

"Were you planning on loaning me some wheat? After all, you would have a better chance of having the loan repaid if you loaned me the wheat instead of loaning it directly to the refugees." (Almis)

"Yes. That is exactly right, and you are ninety-five-percent correct." (Rosaith)

smirk

A face that irritates me to no end.

"And finally for the loan conditions, you were planning on getting our pottery, honey, and our paper manufacturing method, weren't you?" (Almis)

King Rosaith probably wants them like the dead want out of hell.

But he can't get the information out of me by abusing his military might.

There was the possibility that I could have run to King Domorgal, after all. And King Rosaith can't leave due to sickness. Also, if he were to carelessly mobilise his army he could be attacked from behind by clans aiming for the throne.

And above all, if he were to do that he would be hated by Julia, who is close with me.

It would be tough, living while being hated by your only daughter.

And so he decided to use the refugees to get the information out of me.

It's probably something like that.

When I explain all that, King Rosaith clapped.

Applause... does that mean I answered correctly? That doesn't make me happy.

"You are ninety-nine percent correct!! Magnificent. If you were Our son, I would make you Our successor without hesitation. But you are still missing the last one percent. Do you know what that is?" (Rosaith)

.....
I don't know.

King Rosaith shows an evil smile as he looks at my face.

"The one who cursed King Ferme's country was I. How's that? Wahahahaha-*cough* *cough* *cough*" (Rosaith) (*ED note: The king uses 僕(ore) instead of his usual 我/私(ware/watashi) here. 僕 is an arrogant masculine way of referring to oneself, whereas his usual 我 is usually used by kings and the like, which is why I switched from royal we to I, which works especially well in this case in conserving the meaning I feel*)

Don't work yourself up. You're sick.

As I look coldly at King Rosaith, he reclines arrogantly with a nonchalant air around him.

"Now then, how much do you want?" (Rosaith)

"No, we don't need any, we've got enough." (Almis)

When I answer so, King Rosaith's face stiffens.

The most common form of farming in Adernia Peninsula is the two-field system.

And in my village, we use the Norfolk four-course system of crop rotation. Our productivity levels are fundamentally different!

And we even use cows and horses for ploughing deeper into the soil.

Although King Rosaith seems to have expected that we would end up running out of food... that would only be the case if we applied the two-field system as well.

Too bad! You had based your entire plan on what was actually your miscalculation!! I-D-I-O-T!!

"That's only at the moment, right? You'll run out in no time." (Rosaith)

King Rosaith said, with a nonchalant look as if what he was saying had nothing to do with him.

What are you saying?

I just said we're doing fine, didn't I?

Seeing me with a dumbfounded look on my face, King Rosaith said:

"You overlooked something important, didn't you? Well, that doesn't matter. After all, within three days you will come crying to Us for help, pleading 'please lend me wheat.'" (Rosaith)

This guy, showing a look like he's already beat me.

There's no way that I will come crying to you.

Well, whatever.

"By the way, can I ask you something? What would you do if the child of the ruler prior to Ferme – Rago-san, was it – had lived on?" (Almis)

"We would... offer them protection. Rago-dono was a sworn friend of Ours. We could tell whether they were truthfully his child or not by the sacred character and crest on their back." (Rosaith)

"Then what would you do if that child was to ask for forces to regain their land?" (Almis)

"That would depend on the situation, but... We may lend the forces if there was a chance of victory... could it be, you are Rago's child?" (Rosaith)

"That is by no means the case. It is not me." (Almis)

Although if that were true, then this would all be so easy.

"...May We also ask something?" (Rosaith)

"What is it?" (Almis)

"Who is that girl?" (Rosaith)

Before I answer, Tetra clings to me and declares,

"I'm Almis' wife." (Tetra)

I don't remember getting married though...

Well, it's fine.

Doing it like this is more convenient.

“Something like that.” (Almis)

“Is that so...” (Rosaith)

King Rosaith fixedly looks at Tetra’s face.

I look at Tetra’s face.

Tetra gave a large nod.

“She is the daughter of Rago Ars, Tetra Ars.” (Almis)

“We see. We felt like we had seen her face before. She looks exactly the same as him.” (Rosaith)

“Do you need to confirm?” (Tetra)

King Rosaith shook his head in a grand motion in response to Tetra’s question.

“There is no need for that. We can tell from your face. And besides, you are not one to make such an inconsequential lie. And also, what is most important isn’t whether you are the real thing or not. It is whether you can do work of the same level as the genuine article or not.” (Rosaith)

So it doesn’t matter whether she is truly Rago Ars’ daughter, as long as those around her accept her as such.

It’s definitely something he would say.

“But you are quite the crafty one. If you manage to give King Ferme a good fright and shake him up a bit, we will attack him and give you the rights to your own clan.” (Rosaith)

“Haha. Thank you very much. Although I will only be giving him a fright if he comes attacking first.” (Almis)

There’s no guarantee that they will attack us, after all.

I don’t particularly want power. All I want is to be able to make use of whatever I can.

If King Ferme turns out to actually be a peace-loving person, there won't be any war.

"Well then, I will be making my leave here. I have to be checking on King Ferme's country." (Almis)

"Yes. Be careful." (Rosaith)

We took our leave from King Rosaith's presence.



"Hey, Almis." (Tetra)

"What is it?" (Almis)

"It ended up with me taking the role of your wife, but is that fine? You're not straining yourself, are you?" (Tetra)

Tetra asked anxiously.

"A bit late for that, don't you think? I'm not straining myself. After all, you are cute. Rather, I'm happy more than anything. And in the first place, you were always trying to show off your appeal to me so what are you saying this late into the game?" (Almis)

Truthfully, I actually like Tetra quite a bit.

Although I don't really understand the concept of love... well, I don't mind if it's Tetra. I can come to truly believe that.

"What about Julia?" (Tetra)

"...Our social classes are just too different." (Almis)

She is the only daughter of King Rosaith.

Sooner or later she will have to be wed to the son of some largely influential clan.

It wasn't fated to be me.

I'm not so dense as to not understand the fact that Julia has strong feelings for me.

I also like her, just as much as I like Tetra. She's also my type in terms of appearance.... Although it's strange for me to be thinking about this after having accepted Tetra already.

Well, if I were asked whether I want to marry her or not, I would say that I do want to. But there is a difference in our social classes.

"By the way, how are we going to enter King Ferme's country?" (Tetra)

"Let's go with the 'merchant from the south' setting. So, when we were just passing through we noticed that there were abandoned houses wherever we went, so thinking that it was strange we asked about it... I think that should be good enough." (Almis)

The clothes we are currently wearing are fairly good.

After all, we were just returning from an audience with King Rosaith.

We could probably pass as some rich merchants.

"By the way, are there any acquaintances of yours that seem like they might be willing to assist us?" (Almis)

"Hmm, since all of my relatives aside from me are dead... there probably aren't any. Besides, I was ten at the time." (Tetra)

"Is that so. Well, it's been seven years after all." (Almis)

It felt like such a long time, but it wasn't that long ago.

Just thinking about that time feels like I'm reminiscing about a time long past.

"Then, let's just do the investigation for today." (Almis)

For now, I need to come up with some way to deal with those thirty people



"Erm... excuse me. It doesn't seem like there is anybody in this village... what happened? There are a lot of soldiers like you around as well. Is it some sort of epidemic?" (Almis)

I ask, showing a frightened expression.

"That's not it. The citizens of this town have been running away at night. We are currently setting up a search party to bring them back. It's been a real bother. Well, since the one who is leading the troops this time is His Majesty King Ferme-sama, I'm not so sure that it will end with just bringing them back." (soldier)

"Running away? Why have they been running away?" (Almis)

"Well, you see..." (soldier)

The soldier looked around before whispering into my ear

"It's because of the high taxes. They couldn't pay the taxes anymore. To tell the truth, I also want to resign as a soldier. If I don't do my work my relatives will also be subjected to the huge taxes, and they won't get my remittance." (soldier)

That's serious.

It seems like there are a lot of sources of dissatisfaction.

"By the way, why did you guys come to a place like this?" (soldier)

"We've been peddling. We were planning to head north and so we've been transiting through this country, but we saw you soldiers gathered around this village and got curious." (Almis)

I just made up a suitable lie.

"Is that so? But still, the fact that you have a horse is quite enviable. Is that your wife behind you?" (soldier)

Tetra blushes slightly and gives a nod in reply.

"For this trip, we've come to have a look for things that we could possibly sell here. Do

you know of anything that the people around here might buy? We could even arrange for some place's local specialty." (Almis)

"We don't need anything like that here. Well, I guess you could sell some food. After all, everyone here is starving. Although we wouldn't have anything to exchange for it other than humans." (soldier)

The soldier laughs at his own situation.

We also make a forced smile, despite it not really being something to laugh about.

This country seems dangerous.

But is it fine for you to be this loose-lipped?

"Incidentally, how do you plan to bring them back? If I were one of the citizens then I would run to King Rosaith's country. I think they would have arrived there by now." (Almis)

"No, they aren't in King Rosaith's country apparently. I guess King Rosaith doesn't need more useless mouths to feed. We don't need them either though. Haa. I'd guess that they're wandering somewhere in the forest. After all, there was some rumour about some utopia protected by Griffon-sama. They probably believed that and went in there. What idiots." (soldier)

It seems like we've become the residents of a utopia without realising.

Maybe it was a bad idea to bring in too much prosperity. Or maybe I messed up in throwing around the name of the Griffon so lightly.

Or could it be that for starving people, just that much can qualify as a utopia?

"Wouldn't it be hard work to have to search for them in the forest?" (Almis)

"That's not really the case. Although there aren't that many, our country has some sorceror after all. If we use dogs it would be over in no time... although I would be glad if those sorcerorwould get around to making barriers though." (soldier)

During the time in which a barrier is erected, curse power is constantly consumed.

King Ferme has been keeping the sorceror's power in reserve as to be prepared to start a war whenever he wishes.

As a side note, the reason that Julia even went as far as to erect barriers over our fields is because she has way too much excess curse power.

If you were to compare the curse power of an ordinary sorceror to a glass of water, she has five baths full of power, apparently.

She is a prodigal beautiful sorceror, and a princess.

She seems to have received two things from the heavens.

Also, the person behind me is the (self-proclaimed) person who has been a magician for longer than anyone else alive, and the beautiful daughter of a former large clan.

There are too many people given two things around me.

“I’ve heard that Griffon-sama is there... will you guys be alright?” (Almis)

“About that... I’m worried as well. But King Ferme insisted that it would be fine if we sent in around two hundred people... well, King Ferme is much scarier than Griffon-sama, who we don’t even know whether is really there or not.” (soldier)

It seems like Griffon-sama’s authority won’t hold much weight here.

Or could it be that King Ferme just doesn’t have any sort of sense of fear?

Or could it be because he’s well-informed about the Griffon?

“Almis, this is bad. These guys are going to come to our village.” (Tetra)

“Two hundred, huh. How annoying.” (Almis)

I scratched my head.

For now, I now know for sure that those thirty from before are definitely innocent.

I guess we should hurry back.

“Well then, we will be taking our leave here Take care.” (Almis)

“Yeah! Live in happiness, you two!” (soldier)

I hastily returned to the village.

CHAPTER 23

KING FALUDAM

Soon, the stock.....

“Leader! How was it?”

“It’s confirmed, it is almost white. But.....”

I inform everyone that King Ferme’s armed forces are coming.

“That isn’t good. Let’s return them.”

“In this case, contact with King Ferme’s country is troublesome. To begin with, it is too late.”

A really troublesome thing was brought in.

Well, what to do about it?

“Are you delivering those fellows to King Ferme or are you prepared to antagonize King Ferme by sheltering them?”

If King Ferme is not there, I may permit 30 people to stay.

From the beginning it will become a heavy burden, as the population won’t increase if they didn’t cross over.

Besides, it is a natural thing to help so I decided to help.

Naturally, children have top priority, but if I’m able I will help even adults.

However, I don’t want to be falsely accused by King Ferme.

The top priority is everyone here now.

“Errr..... Is King Ferme really hostile?”

Soyon raised her hand and asked.

“Who knows? But when you see the details of the ruling methods of kings...”

“Even if you don’t say so..... those people are ones that ran away once. If that’s the case, I think it will be difficult to keep an eye on them if they are brought back.”

It might be so now that you say that.

It is a group who ran away under the cover of darkness once, so they are bad assets. They will likely escape again even if they are brought back. There is also a danger in them joining together with a foreign country.

Is there a merit in doing so and securing 30 people?

I think it’s normally [30 people produce taxes] < [Amassing the forces to observe them]. (*Darknari: He is saying that the tax money from 30 people is not worth wasting the time, money, and resources it would take to keep the possible rebels in check*)

If it was me, I would give up.

It would alleviate discontent if the abandoned farmland is distributed to the vassals.

Eh?

If that is the case, why come and chase after them?

That reminds me that the soldier said something disturbing.

Possibly.....

“The people who escaped are rebels. Rebels are massacred.”

Tetra said something dangerous.

As expected, it is that? Killing to make an example.

That one is effective.

Though the revenue is affected if it is 1000 people, but it is not a problem for 30 people.

Probably, if it’s not conveyed that they were killed it would affect the morale of the soldiers. (*Fraiziar: I’d say “Probably, if the killing of the rebels isn’t confirmed and reported, the morale of (The country’s) soldiers would be affected.”*)

Because nobody would want to kill their fellow countrymen.

"Then, should I help? Those people are innocent."

"That is also right. I agree with helping them."

Roswald and Ron expressed their approval.

"I also agree."

Gram also approved.

"I also think it's better to help them. It would be pitiable if they got killed."

Soyon also agreed?

If I remember correctly, Tetra also agreed.

"They are tentatively my parents..... it would be the same as killing them if I just looked on....." (Manga Hunter: Is Lulu talking about her mother here or all the people?)

Lulu was unmotivated and yet she expressed agreement.

"The other? Fellows who oppose please raise your hand."

Nobody raises their hand.

"Those in favor?"

All hands went up.

With this it is decided.



“For the time being, everyone..... it has been decided to accept you all.”

When I said so, the refugees..... the new villagers raised a shout of joy.

“However, the decision could possibly be overturned. It depends on your actions.”

When I said so, the villagers nodded with a serious face.

They seem to understand their standing for the time being.

I don't have anything in particular to say as long as they act obediently.

“Also, Yal was it? Please come. There is a discussion.”

I call the representative of the new villagers.

First of all, we have to discuss about measures for King Ferme.

I gather Yal, Tetra, Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyon, and Lulu inside the building.

These seven people are the executives of this village..... or positions like that.

Ron and Roswald have pure strong power and also a sense of responsibility.

Gram is the best at handling a bow in this village. There is a resignation in that.

Soyon and Lulu are the few that have magic war potential.

Tetra..... it goes without saying.

If Yal does not have the new villagers integrated after this, they won't become a part of the village.

“Now then, what is the agenda for the approaching King Ferme's army?”

When I said so, Yal had a startled face.

That reminds me that I didn't explain it to him. Oh well.

“For the time being. Is King Ferme trying to kill the people who had accepted those

people, the premise here? What would we do if King Ferme is foolish enough to just come and get them back?"

"At that time..... I will give a tribute to curry favor."

I feel like withdrawing, if he is that foolish.

I mean since I said that I accepted you, I would feel awkward to quickly change my attitude.

[At best, plead to me] as I recall King Rosaith's remark.

Does it mean that the tribute taken is wheat?.....

"Is it no use?"

".....There is no choice but to leave."

Yal looks down in silence.

After all, his right to speak is not equal in this place.

However, when King Ferme comes should I give tribute? The opponent is 200.

They will likely plunder if I don't hand it over quietly.

In other words, I can't do anything but give the wheat up. Shit..... I may really have to throw myself on their mercy.

"It seems this talk is already sufficient. I assume King Ferme will come to pursue the story and massacre everyone. I'll have the new villagers take off their clothes. It is possible that they might say I killed you if I have your clothes taken. There were animal bones that we had eaten yesterday. And then there's the foolish heroes' bones scattered about near the griffon-sama's bed. The credibility might increase with that. I will let you keep your face with this."

They need not have to kill the citizens particularly.

It only has to be a fact that they were killed.

There's no problem if the mouths of 200 soldiers are sealed afterwards.

If there is a chatty soldier I think it might be impossible.

"With this. It is a problem if King Ferme targets our village. It could very well work this time, but..... I intend to stave it off with the tribute first."

"Does it depend on the quantity? It will be painful if they collect a dreadful amount from us annually."

"For now, should we endure it for one year? In that year we can gather weapons. Let's negotiate for that weapon support."

Nevertheless, if they demand an excessive amount.....

It can't be helped.

"The question is how much we can take out? How much savings are there?"

"As it is, because our agrotechnology is higher than the opponent, the amount of reserves can be deceived. Let's take out 50% from 70% of the real harvest."

Tetra said the calculated stored amount with mental arithmetic.

Though the amount is enough that we can eat, but it can't guarantee the cost of the refugees' food.

As expected, I can do nothing but appeal to King Rosaith.....

It truly annoying. That bald bastard. (*pengu: I think he talking about Rosaith*)

"Do we supplement the insufficient amount with honey, fur and liquor?"

Paper and unglazed ware are no good.

The value of that is too high.

They might come back and ask for the method.

Though honey is valuable, it isn't problematic since there is a method to take from the natural honeybee hive.

Almost all objectives are decided.

"Ok! Please prepare the tribute. I will conceal the wheat reserves. Just to be sure."

Afterwards it depends on my negotiation skill.

“Ah, that’s right. First, there is something I must say.”

All eyes pay attention to me.

“I, when this negotiation is over, will get married.”



“Good grief, they were troublesome with their escape. They might as well raise a revolt. It wouldn’t be necessary to chase if they did so.”

Ferme said in a troublesome tone.

The person in question doesn’t need to expressly go if it’s troublesome.

However, because the root is serious he especially goes out.

Good decisions and diligent character is what makes him a king.

“Should we really annihilate them?”

“Naturally. Isn’t it good? The same thing will happen again if I permit it even a little.”

Because it was only 30 this time, it wouldn’t affect many people.

However, it is a different story if it becomes 100 or 200 people.

It was better to crush the eye of the rebellion.

“Right. As for such a one time cruelty, it is important to do it thoroughly. What, the preparations for invading King Rosaith’s country are completed. I only have to fill people’s bellies with food at that time.”

“Haa, is that so? No, I know well the king’s strength. Nevertheless, there is still the problem of the landlord group.”

Landlords who conspired with Ferme to overthrow the Ars House.

They were nursing dissatisfaction towards Faludam.

As their taxes are still high, no ranking in an important post, and unlike the time of King Rosaith's reign luxuries become impossible to own.

The dissatisfaction can't help, but dissatisfy.

"Humph, leave those guys alone. They can't do anything anyway. There are no heavy loses in place where the people who conspired with King Rosaith. Rather, it is a chance for me to take care of it all together. Leaving that aside, the problem is those guys who still swear loyalty to Ragou."

There is no person who can compliment that feudal lord Ragou is a wise ruler. Misgovernment was done many times.

It was guessed that he would lose the war to Ferme, too.

However, he is a gentle person so there were a lot of soldiers and generals who sweared fidelity to Ragou.

Superficially, they accepted King Ferme's reign, but they will rebel if there is a chance.

Although, people's stomachs aren't filled with kindness.

In the end, they were killed by influential landlords, who played a central role in fanning the revolt on Ferme.

"It is painful to have overlooked that shitty brat now."

"It's already dead. A 10-year-old child can't live by wandering alone in the forest. It must have become flesh and blood with the wolves by now."

The close aide said that he worried too much.

"My king! The place of the group was caught hold of."

"You did well. Where is it?"

"It's a place a little south from here. But....."

The shaman man hesitates to speak a little.

"There was a place like a village. The group's scent is from there."

"A village, you say?"

Ferme is lost in thought.

He has heard the rumor of the village protected by the griffon, too.

However, he thought it was a rumor after all.

It might be the perseverance of the abandoned children that united in order to live somehow.

They picked up the griffon's feather as proof and stripped the iron swords from the corpses.

I thought so.

But it's a different story if there really is a village.

"This is bad..... we can't expect to also win against a god."

"I heard that the griffon doesn't concern itself with human wars. It might not be a problem. Besides, that fellow's territory is deeper inside. No problem."

Ferme said.

In reality, the griffon considers Almis to be an existence that has become independent and has stopped supporting it.

Therefore his expectation is right.

"Is that so. At worst, we will retreat as soon as the griffon comes out."

The aide muttered so.

After a while passed the view opened up, the trees became sparse and the stumps increased.

"Is that it? It is of some scale."

Ferme muttered while looking at the village from a distance.

Judging from the number of houses and the size of the fields, the village's scale is roughly 100 to 150 people.

To ward off wolves the village has dug up and set up a simple fence.

"Hmm? Someone has come out."

Approximately 40-50 people appeared from the village's entrance.

They have bows and swords.

"Shall we exterminate them?"

"No, it isn't necessary. Apparently, they seem to want to talk."

One man stepped forward from within the group.

The man is mounted on a horse.

The man came forward little by little, and stood approximately 100 meters away.

"What business do have? King Ferme!"

The man shouted loudly so.

Though Ferme was surprised a little, he answered.

"You have to answer that first."

"I am named Almis the person who governs this village."

Ferme looks hard and observes the man who introduces himself as Almis.

His face is blurred, but it is understood that he is a youth from his physique.

"I am chasing after our nation's citizens who ran away to this village! Deliver them

quietly!"

"We can't afford to let you kill the people in our presence. I can't agree."

"This guy, you have comprehended well that I was going to slaughter those people."

Such a frightening idea doesn't occur in normal people.

Is he considerably hot-headed or is he accustomed to politics?

"Then, let's talk. Come here alone!"

When Ferme called out so, the youth began to advance alone.

It's seems he is fairly bold.

The youth stopped at a distance of 10 meters.

If I approach just a little, his face can be seen.

His hair and eyes are ashen. His body is muscular, as I can see that his body is tempered under his clothes.

The clothes he wore were quite a fine article.

"Nice to meet you, King Ferme. Shall I approach more?"

"No. It isn't necessary. Since you may not feel relieved."

Ferme answered.

"Then, what is the reason to not agree?"

"Because our village population is few. There won't be a problem for you to kill us anyway even if we accept, is there?"

The youth answered.

He doesn't appear frightened of Ferme at all.

He seems to have considerable nerves of steel.

"It won't be so. You have my honor. Only dead bodies are necessary."

"Then, there is no problem. There is the thief's body who invaded the village in the past. Though, it's only bones. Though it was left to expose, before long I got tired of looking at it, so I'll offer it to you."

Ferme unintentionally frowned at those words.

Though an agreeable youth is seen, but he appears like a villain.

Still, Ferme isn't cruel enough to have the hobby of displaying skeletons.

"The numbers are insufficient."

"Is it alright if I supplement it with animal bones? That's right. Also, please take their clothes at the same time. The credibility might increase."

Ferme ponders about it a little.

There is no problem as long as it is a fact that they have been killed.

Therefore, it's good to accept the youth's suggestion. It won't be a problem if I silence the soldiers in the rear.

The enemy is 40 people which is 1/5 of ours. (*pengu: plus Almis's population*) Though, we can certainly win, but some damage will occur if they hold out a siege.

In addition, I want to avoid fighting as I consider about dealing with the refugees and other noncombatants.

It seems stupid to reduce the soldiers in such a place.

"Well, it's alright. Apart from that, are you able to afford to feed 30 people?"

Ferme licks his lips.

"It looks like your village is in our country's territory. You wouldn't mind right?"

"I don't care. But, I want you to promise self government."

"That's fine. As long as tax is paid. That's right..... give me 80% of this village's harvest."

Ferme doesn't intend to govern such a village in the first place.

We only need to tear off all that we can.

There is no need for hesitation, since they are not my country's people.

I only need to destroy them if they refuse.

By assaulting them only 80% or less is taken, as for tribute we should receive 80% or more.

The country can sustain a while longer as long as grain is obtained.

Afterwards such a village would be neglected.

It doesn't have value beside sending soldiers there since it is near King Rosaith's capital.

Besides, soldiers can be placed here if the man refused.

He may request for King Rosaith's help.

The soldiers who I send will exterminate them when it happens. There isn't a profit to obtain it. (*Darknari: it actually said sen (1/100 of a yen) which is less than a cent*)

“Will it be right now?”

“Naturally. You won't say that you have eaten all of the spring crops? It is useless to deceive me. I know how much you can harvest if I look at the village's scale.”

If he missed this, King Rosaith's army will be called out.

It has to be now.

If I had a larger army, we might be able to storm it without great damage..... in the first place, this village is a godsend.

There is no other way.

“80%, is it? That is too much. I can yield 60%, can you accept that? In exchange, I will supply honey and fur as this village's special product.”

“Heehh, honey is it.....”

Honey is rarely eaten since it has a very high price.

It depends on the amount, but it's not a bad deal.

“70%. And, I will come to an agreement.”

“I understand. I will prepare it immediately. Wait for a bit.”

The youth said so and went back to the village.

A short time later, a few men pull a cart with pots.

“By all means.”

“That is considerably fast. Did you already prepare it?”

The youth makes a ingratiating smile when Ferme said so.

“Well, fine. I obtained an unexpected profit. Let's return. If it's leaked I will come to execute that person.”

Ferme changes the direction of his horse and turns his back on the village.

CHAPTER 24

WAR POTENTIAL

Author's note:

There is no excuses for the lack of description in the previous story. I add this to supplement in various ways.

It was comment by someone said it's troublesome to read once again.

Firstly, Ferme King's country and Almis village have quite a distance so it isn't realistic to rule. A revolt will happen immediately even if he station a few soldiers. The stationed soldiers will be killed by Almis when running away. There is a possibility for King Rosaith's military to be stationed.

Therefore King Ferme didn't mind putting it under control.

Therefore, he received only tribute and returned. The remark of putting it under control he said is to keep face as the king. It seems to be little hard to understand here.

When Almis said for self govern, by passing the tribute to intercept worries.

Judging from King Ferme viewpoint, he chased after the refugees and found a rich village. I told about food shortage as a pretext to plunder it and return, I don't want to give damage so I make demand for tribute for the time being. It becomes such feeling.

Naturally King Ferme's subordinate..... soldiers, entering as investigator is useless. Therefore King Ferme didn't enters inside to check the actual harvest, but guessed from the village scale. He intend to come and plunder it, as the make-believe tax was collected more or less as inquire so cheating isn't important, he think whether it is alright. He wants to avoid fight of the possibility of him dying.

There is 80% of it.....

King Ferme thought the present force was enough to conquer Amis's village. But damage is given. When conquer the village, you must care for the non-soldiers and the refugees in the village. King Ferme thought that the enemy has maximum about 200 from the scale of the village.

Even if all members don't have weapons, he would die from them throwing stone. King Ferme's soldiers was drafted, so neither skills or morale is high. There would be few damage and he has to deal with death soldiers.

Then, the idea is that it is better to avoid fight.

In other words, there is more profits if Almis gives 80% quietly than to fight and take it all.

Therefore, he enquired the number 80%

His ideology is that my descendants will have influence so as a ruler I thought that war should be avoid as much as possible.

Have you convinced?

By the way, Almis finally hand over 70%, but in reality it was 50%.

As King Ferme was deceived with two fields system, he accepted 50% with "it is roughly so" and returned.

It was possible to deceive him simple because the farming technique was different.

Incidentally, I received comment about not understanding the geography so a map is placed in afterward.

"Alright! We've somehow survived!" (Almis)

I was relieved.

Even so, when I mentioned the displaying of skeletons, I was surprised that King Ferme's face turned stiff.

I guess he was surely empathizing with them.

He wouldn't do something cruel to that extent, huh?

Well, concerning the result it was a success so it's fine.

But his impression of me has deteriorated.

While I was taking a breather with Tetra in the house, Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyom, and Lulu those five people entered.

"Well then, Leader. Continuing from earlier, What's with the sudden marriage?" (Ron)

"What. Perhaps, don't tell me you wanted to marry me?" (Almis)

"You're wrong!" (Ron)

Ron shook his head forcefully.

That gives me peace of mind. He was surely too fond of me so his inclination might have warped.

"It was discussed a little while ago." (Almis)

"As I thought, you..... in such a flow?" (Ron)

"When you say that, I am troubled."](Tetra)

Tetra said as she looked at me.

No, I'm also troubled you know!

"Well, that's fate, huh?" (Ron)

I didn't know what I supposed to say.

It became like that.

I don't know when I was brainwashed by Tetra.

For some reason I feel no need to question the marriage whatsoever.

"Is it okay to decide to get married so easily like that?" (Soyon)

Soyon asked with a complaining face.

Is calling out "Please, marry me!" with a bouquet in one hand in a beautiful nightscape, your ideal Soy়on?

No, I also thought proposing should have been something like that.....

I don't understand.

Since my last girlfriend was in the third grade back in my previous life.,

I haven't fallen in love since that time.

It's a mystery.

Did I embrace the illusion of love too much, or was it that I just didn't realize that this is love?

Could it be that I'm falling in love with both Tetra and Julia?

For me to fall in love with two people, I'm the lowest.

Though the relationship between me and Tetra was supposed to be a marriage of convenience, I became her real fiancé, huh?

Now that I think about it, I have no problems with this flow of events.

I mean, recently we had been sleeping in the same house, always sharing blankets.

Huh? Was that all part of Tetra's plan?

"Waa... My image of ideal love....." (Lulu)

Lulu held her head in her hands.

I get you, I get you.

I feel the same way.

"In the meantime, it's a thing to be celebrated so... Congratulations." (Roswald)

When Roswald said that, everyone had looks of being caught and mumbled their congratulations.

Stop acting shy.

When I was about to say that, I realized I had actual feelings.

Ah, I see. I'm going to marry this person, huh...

Embarrassing, huh...

"Almis..... You're blushing too late....." (Tetra)

Tetra said while also blushing.

"Umm, we've still yet to hear the details of what actually happened though..." (Gram)

Gram asked tactlessly.

"That concerns Tetra." (Almis)

As I said so, Tetra stepped forward.

"There is something I have to say to everyone." (Tetra)

Tetra began to talk about her circumstances.



"H~mm."

Everyone seemed to have a very dull reaction.

How anticlimactic.

I was expecting more of an "EEEH?!!" or "REALLY?" reaction you know.

"I mean isn't it a bit late to be surprised? And it was a mystery why Tetra had such a good intellect too." (??)

"And when we first met Tetra, her hands were like those that had never done farm

work before too."(??)

"And she's afraid of insects too."(??)

Everyone had guessed.

Though, I did too.

"Mmm..... I thought I was hiding it pretty well. Was I the only one who thought that?(Tetra)

"Tetra, you always bathed alone! And also, whenever we accidentally ran into each other you would hide your back instead of your breasts. Wasn't it a bit too obvious?" (Lulu)

Lulu said while laughing.

"In the first place, we've known each other for six years now, How dull would we have to be to not realize?" (Roswald)

Roswald said with an amazed face.

"Well, this person is also a bit slow in strange places." (Ron)

When Ron begins to laugh, everyone laughed in unison.

Tetra puffed out her cheeks.

"Don't sulk, Tetra-chan. By the way, Almis-san. Is your marriage with Tetra a marriage of convenience? I think getting married for a reason like that just doesn't feel right"(Lulu?)

"Well, yes that was true at the start. But no matter what the merit, I wouldn't marry someone I didn't like." (Almis)

Tetra's origin was pressing down on my back.

I knew it was necessary to resolve her feelings at some point.

"Whether it's politics, or something else it's fine." (Tetra)

Tetra clung to me saying so.

Er, well... by her repeating such actions, the outer moat has been filled up, huh?

"When are we doing the wedding?" (Tetra)

"It's good that things have become settled for the time being with King Ferme." (Almis)

It had become a confused mess.

Right now there are a lot of things we should prepare.

"First, we need to reinforce our war potential. We were fine this time, but it would be hard on us if they took from our stocks every year. Since we could starve if a famine occurred." (Almis)

"Will we fight?" (Tetra)

"I don't know. But we cannot even negotiate without a weapon." (Almis)

Conflict does not occur unless both sides are at the same level.

When the level of power is too different there is only the dominator and the dominated.

The enemy could enslave us, and it's also possible for them to take our provisions by massacring us.

"A famine is occurring, it's possible they may try to solve it by taking our food from us." (Almis)

"What exactly should we do?" (Tetra)

Tetra raised her face that had been buried in my body.

"I believe there are enough iron spears for everyone? In the meantime we should adjust their lengths. Those are our main weapons. After that is the bow. How many people in the village can handle a bow?" (Almis)

"I guess about ten decent people, with a possibility of five more." (Gram)

Gram answered.

In other words fifteen people, huh.

That's not a bad force. The habitual hunting has borne fruit.

"Say, Yal. Of your thirty people, how many men are above the age of twelve and below sixty? Are there any sorcerers?" (Almis)

"Err, there are ten men. As for sorcerers..... The advanced sorcery soul riding cannot be used, but there are two moderate users." (Yal)

I see. Originally our village's war potential was forty people, and in all we have fifty.

Only three sorcerers in our village can soul ride.

But the other sorcerers of our village are a total of ten.

So a total of twelve, huh.

Even so, among all thirty of those people there are only two sorcerers, huh.

Out of our village of a hundred there are thirteen here. Moreover, they are mostly children.

"Rather, two out of thirty is in itself an unusually high number. Usually, a village would have only one out of a hundred people. Our village just has too many." (Yal)

"Why is there so many?" (Almis)

"Who knows? Julia's a talented teacher..... Though that's probably wrong. Since magic is 90% talent." (Yal)

No, it looks like it's just a coincidence that's too good to be true.

"Also if I remember correctly, Ferme's King has nine sorcerers that can soul ride under his command." (Yal)

We have three people...

A village of 130 people has three capable sorcerers that can soul ride, and a country of a little under thirty thousand has nine.

.....As I thought, this is absolutely strange.

"Don't mind the minor details. It's probably by chance. Perhaps it has something to do with your relationship with Griffon-sama." (Yal)

I see, Griffon, huh.

It could be his influence. It's sufficient.

"Anyways, it's a welcomed thing. The small difference between our number of sorcerers is a good thing." (Almis)

Now let's go towards a course of action where we don't need to worry about the minor details.

"There are thirty-five infantry and fifteen bowmen. Not bad." (Yal)

"No, there are only thirty infantry. The remaining five people will be cavalry." (Almis)

Since there are saddles and stirrups, if we practice, we can ride properly.

It's fine because everyone's reflexes are good.

I don't expect them to do something advanced like shooting a bow (while riding).

Just throwing a stone while moving is enough to become a threat.

If they can flank their sides and plunge into them, they may be able to break their ranks.

"We must not forget the defenses of the village." (Almis)

"I think we should dig a palisade." (Ron)

"I also think a watch tower is necessary. You'd be able to fire bows from it as well."(Gram)

"Though I think stone walls are best, that's impossible isn't it..." (Roswald)

Ron, Gram, and Roswald said together.

Well, that's gonna take some time so we should make it little by little.

It's also important to do some research on the best way to construct it.

"Next is weapons." (Almis)

Can we make those?.....

During the time I was in junior high I studied the method of their construction. Ah, the indiscretions of youth.

But that's too dangerous.

I look at everyone.

Everyone is going to fight for their lives.

Naturally, I'd like to avoid fighting if possible..... Still, if we don't fight back we could die. No, unless we were incredibly lucky we would definitely die.

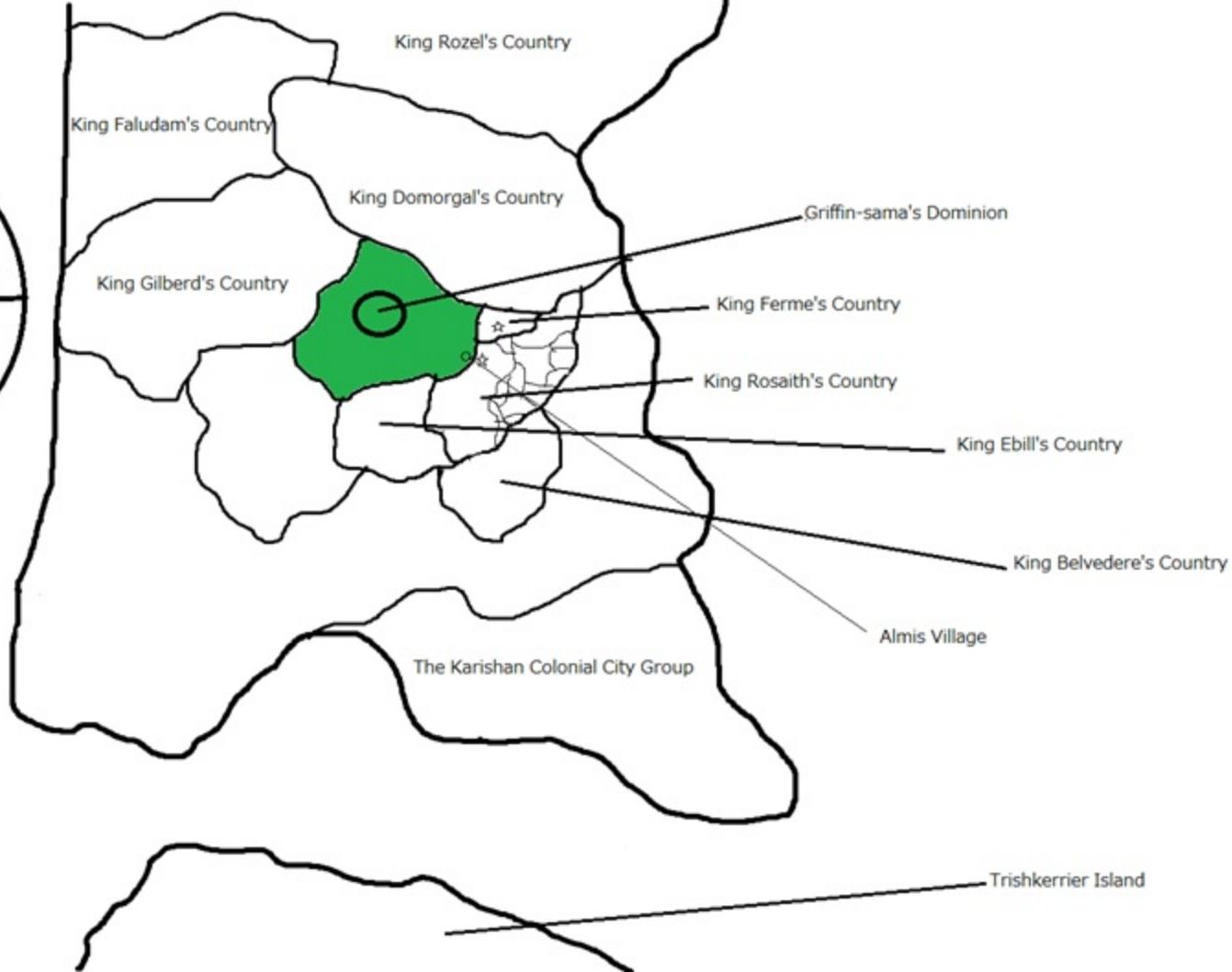
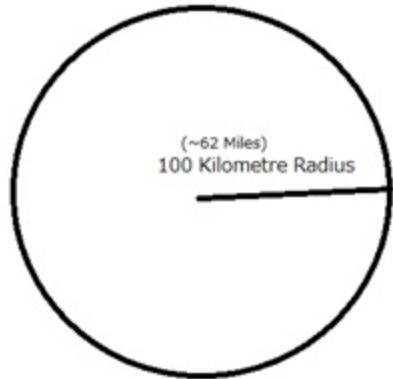
This is not the time to be scared.

Let's make it.

Black powder.

Author's afterwords:

As this map may change since it is a provisional ones. And, it may be different from the work description. Please take this in consideration.



King Ebill's country and King Belvedere's country is schedule in mainly three chapter, as it is important that they make an appearance. Other countries is name as the following,

Thick line is border, the thin line is the territory border. Green is forest of Roman

As Julia said, the north is King Rozel country the mastermind behind the curse. (*Pengu: new character but not yet introduced*)

The ruler is a person from Adernia same as Almis, the ruler is a people who dwell in the north of Adernia Peninsula called Lian.

By the way, the south culture in Adernia Peninsula is under influence of the colonized city of Karishian.

However, Ironware was invented by a northern race, because it was handed down in the past.

The next chapter is about Julia.

Incidentally, black powder chapter is Almis chapter.

I took a liking to a science exam called homework in middle school as I have to look up method of producing black powder as dynamite. What kind of feeling when the teach mark it you though? Oh, by the way, the science's result was five. (*pengu: it's like A+ I think*)

I wonder what kind of middle schooler like bomb?

CHAPTER 25

FIRST TIME

The First Time.

Black powder is one of China's four great inventions.

While it isn't something significant enough to require an explanation, it is what is generally referred to as explosives.

It can be made by mixing charcoal, sulfur, and potassium nitrate.

Though cannons can be made of wood, they are likely to explode.

The handling of black powder is complicated, so I'm unsure how to properly come into contact with it.

I don't want to die from doing a poor job.

It can be used to launch things like iron, or it can be set into the ground and be exploded using flaming arrows.

That'll be our main weapon.

I expect its effectiveness will improve when combined with Tetra's magic.

But I don't expect it have the ability to cause bloodshed very much.

I wonder how far the crude gunpowder made by a novice such as I can go?.....

However, the sound and shock wave should have quite the impact.

It may be able to lower the enemy's morale, and perhaps could be used to frighten King Ferme before the war.

Will they get scared I wonder?

Or maybe due to him drawing back because of my skeleton remark, it's probably

impossible for him to be frightened.

Continuing from what I said earlier, black powder is made from charcoal, sulfur, and potassium nitrate.

The first ingredient is no problem, since charcoal can be produced by ourselves.

Although it seems hard to obtain sulfur, since there are a lot of volcanoes in this area sulfur can be found.

Worst case scenario, we can import some from the Kirishian merchants.

I'm sure the well informed Kirishians should know of sulfur.

There are two ways of obtaining potassium nitrate.

Either from mining saltpeter or from producing it ourselves.

Since I don't know where saltpeter is buried, this time around we will have to make it ourselves.

The material we will use is the black soil under the cattle shed.

Although the soil from under the cattle shed couldn't possibly be enough, however I plan on getting some from King Rosaith.

"Tetra. Can you develop an ignition magic matrix. Within a year." (Almis)

"Roger that. But writing with my blood does not have sufficient magical power. Curse stones..... it is one of the handy stones for using magic, I want to stock up on magic stones." (Tetra)

"Gotcha. Since I don't know what kind of stone is best, for now I'll make an order for all types from the Kirishian merchants. Ron, Roswald, Gram. Will you come with me to where King Rosaith is?" (Almis)

My goal of course, was to get the black soil.

Soil is plentiful anyhow, so he should give it to us for free.

I want Ron, Roswald, and Gram to learn how to lead troops.

I must ask King Rosaith to have you mix in.

Of course I want to observe as well if I get the chance.

But before that I need to negotiate with that Kirishian merchant to prepare some high performance horses, bows and arrows, and arrowheads.

I might even purchase some combat slaves if necessary.



“I see. Tribute. Giving tribute for the protection of your home.” (King Rosaith)

“Unfortunately, it was a state of emergency.” (Almis)

At the moment, I’ve come before King Rosaith to request for aid, and I feel like I’m gonna die.

But then...

“Cough, cough.” (King Rosaith)

“Are you okay? Father.” (Julia)

Lying on the futon, King Rosaith was getting his back rubbed by Julia.

There’s no way I can ask a sick person for help!

“Here. Some honey.” (Almis)

“...Sorry for the bother.” (King Rosaith)

I handed over the honey as usual.

"Now then, surely you didn't just come to tell me that information, did you?" (King Rosaith)

King Rosaith was grinning. Shaddup you.

"I have four bits of business. To start, the first thing is..... wheat. Please lend us some wheat." (Almis)

"Sure. How much?" (King Rosaith)

I firmly request King Rosaith for the wheat.

"Ha... That's quite a bit. Didn't you say before that you'd have enough? Just how much did King Ferme take?" (King Rosaith)

"Well, you know..." (Almis)

There is a different reason why I am demanding so much.

We need some time to strengthen the defense of the village. Which means we won't have enough time for farmwork.....

That's why that much is necessary.

"You must pay it back in three years. Ten percent interest will be sufficient. And in exchange you have to pay with your methods of making pottery, honey, and paper." (King Rosaith)

"You ask too much. You know, I do have the means of negotiating with King Domorgal." (Almis)

As I said so, King Rosaith shrugged.

"I understand. It was just a joke. Just choose one." (King Rosaith)

Then.....

"I'll teach you how to make our pottery." (Almis)

Since it's the simplest.

I explain the structure of the climbing kiln to King Rosaith.

"My second request is that I want cattle shed soil. In large amounts." (Almis)

"I don't really understand what you are planning but... oh well. Do as you wish." (King Rosaith)

King Rosaith gave us permission with a mystified look.

"Next is something I just want to ask but... about a yellow stone that burns, are there any? We plan to mine some from a volcano." (Almis)

Unfortunately, I don't know what they call sulfur in this world.

Conversations with children rarely contain the word sulfur after all.

"Ah, we've collected some of those stones from near one of our hot springs, it's called sulfur isn't it? If so, quite a bit of it can be found in that mountain. Take whatever you like." (King Rosaith)

"Is that okay?" (Almis)

"Sure. Since you always bring us honey." (King Rosaith)

That's surprising.

Well, I guess it's cause they don't have much use for sulfur. Is it not used very much to light fires in this ancient world?

During the Edo Period sulfur was used instead of matches a lot.

"Fourth, could we watch the military training of King Rosaith's army?" (Almis)

"I see. Measures against King Ferme? I don't mind. If it's just watching, that is." (King

Rosaith)

“Is it okay if I watch with my comrades?” (Almis)

“Sure.” (King Rosaith)

Okay, we all got permission.

“Julia. You go guide them.” (King Rosaith)

“Ka~y!” (Julia)



“How is it? This is my country’s army.” (Julia)

Before my eyes a thousand men are training in ranks.

At a glance, it seems this corps is heavy infantry.

Similar to the so-called phalanx.

But.....

“Y~eah, is this skill level considered high?” (Almis)

I’m not sure since I’m an amateur, but frankly they don’t look all that strong to me.

In the first place, a phalanx needs a strong force of unity and a powerful fighting spirit.

That can’t be gained from a bunch of conscripted soldiers.

“Ahaha. It’s as you say. The same thing was said by the Kirishian merchants who visited before. As for this, we’ve been unsuccessfully trying to imitate the military tactics of Kirishia. From what I’ve heard, the Kirishians don’t have a king but rather everyone goes into politics. That’s why everyone’s morale is high, and whenever they have free time they train and get stronger. But in my father’s country, these soldiers are from two years worth of conscripting so...” (Julia)

I see. In that case it can’t be helped.

It may be a bit bad that the Kirishians are so advanced.

The drop in quality from indiscriminate imitation is blatant.

“Over there is where we are training archery.” (Julia)

Looking at the place where Julia pointed towards, I saw about 200 men training by firing arrows at targets.

“Those guys aren’t people brought in from the draft. So their morale is high.” (Julia)

Since archery is a more advanced skill, huh.

Conscripted soldiers wouldn’t necessarily be able to use them right away.

“How about it? Gram. Could you beat them?” (Almis)

“With the distance of that target I could hit it with my eyes closed. I don’t know how experienced they are at shooting arrows so I don’t know if i’d win or not but... I’m confident.” (Gram)

“And over there are the Imperial Guards. They are the elites you know.” (Julia)

Julia pointed her finger to about fifty men having a mock battle.

“Those are the elites? Ron’s or Roswald’s movements seem more precise to me though...” (Almis)

I used to do a bit of kendo.

I was taught by the orphanage’s director. (Self-styled Four Steps, validity unknown).

Looking at what was before me, I noticed a lot of unnecessary movement.

Of course, there might be a difference in technique.

The technique I taught Ron and Roswald was kendo, which has been studied and perfected in Japan over a long period of time.

On the other hand, these people are all probably swinging their swords using a self-

taught style.

Since I see no uniform movement at all.

Therefore it's obvious that the Ron and Roswald who know kendo would be stronger.

But that's not where I'm concerned.

It's physical ability.

It's blatantly obvious that these guys were less physically fit than Ron or Roswald.

"Aren't these guys slacking in their training?" (Almis)

"Hey hey, don't just say whatever you want." (???)

A voice came from behind.

When I turned around, I saw a large man with a huge scar on his face.

He was pretty young. And smelled of liquor.

"Who are you to be deceiving our family's princess?" (scar man)

"Hey, Bartolo! What are you saying!" (Julia)

Julia blushed, shouting in complaint.

"I don't really know what you mean by 'deceiving', but my name is Almis. Are you the person recognized as the general of this country?" (Almis)

"That's right. The king entrusted me with the army." (Bartolo)

That's amazing.

He barely looks to be in his thirties.

Is he that talented?

He's a drunkard though.

Maybe it was because he saw my surprised expression, Bartolo placed his arm on my shoulder in an overly-familiar way.

You smell of liquor, get away from me.

"You know how King Ferme recently attacked our country, right?" (Bartolo)

"Yeah, I heard. It seems to have been a crushing defeat." (Almis)

King Ferme attacked with 500 soldiers while King Rosaith fought with his 1000 troops.

After King Rosaith's defeat, he was deprived of much of his grain.

"And because of that defeat the responsibility went towards the head of the general (literally, not figuratively). So I was placed in this position." (Bartolo)

Bartolo said happily.

"Anyways, did you say our family's soldiers are weak, eh?" (Bartolo)

"Well... yeah. At least that's how it seems to me." (Almis)

I answer honestly.

"Then, let's find out, eh? You and our soldiers..." (Bartolo)

"That's not necessary." (Ron)

Ron interjected.

"There's no need to fight our leader. I'll do it. Since, sadly, I'm the weakest out of all of us." (Ron)

Ron said while patting the hilt of his sword.

Maybe when Ron said "out of all of us" he meant out of me, Roswald, and Ron. Gram doesn't count since he's an archer.

"Sounds good! I love high-spirited guys. Let's do it right away." (Bartolo)



“”You’re kidding me.....”” (Bartolo & Almis)

Those same words spill from both Bartolo’s and my mouth.

Bartolo probably thought that Ron’s strength was a lie.

And I thought that the weakness of Rosaith’s soldiers was a lie too.

No, I think I’ve somehow gradually understood that the ‘lie’ was Ron’s strength.

In front of my eyes, the ten men who challenged Ron to a rematch were downed with surprising swiftness.

Judging from how Bartolo had spoken, he should have had considerable confidence.

Which means that the basis of his self-confidence in the training of the Rosaith soldiers is appropriate.

Therefore, they aren’t weak.

Which means the only remaining option is that it’s just Ron who is too strong.

No, maybe it’s just that our village’s specs are too high.

Since certainly, Ron is the third strongest from our village (counting me and Roswald), but that doesn’t mean you can conclude that he was strong.

In fact, there is something I have been wondering.

Why have we never gotten sick?

In our village everyone was a weak child from the start, it wouldn’t have been funny if someone died from disease in the first year. However, there wasn’t even one death.

No, that has to be from our effort and good luck.

The biggest mystery was about the fields.

Every year I expanded the fields, and plowed them.

Right now we are plowing fields 1.5 times the size of the original fields.

Despite the workforce being nothing but children.

And we even had time left over for studying and practicing martial arts.

That’s just weird.

‘Maybe it’s normal’ I thought, but after all it’s weird. It’s strange. It’s abnormal.

Suddenly, I saw Julia laughing next to me.

She must have been holding her laughter back.

At my glance, Julia turned towards me and adopted a more effeminate demeanor.

“Sorry about that. The fact that you were surprised was funny. You weren’t aware, were you?” (Julia)

“What do you mean by that?” (Almis)

“Heehee, very well, I’ll enlighten you. Hey, Roswald-kun, Gram-kun, I’m borrowing Almis for a bit, okay?” (Julia)

Saying that, Julia began pulling me away.



“What is it?” (Almis)

“Truth is, I also possess divine protection. In fact, quite a lot of them.” (Julia)

Julia laughed mischievously.

‘Also’?

“My handiest blessings are probably [Divine Protection of Perception] and [Divine Protection of Clairvoyance]. The former allows me to observe the divine protection of other parties. The latter is a divine protection that lets me see far away places. In truth, I found you after playing around with clairvoyance in the forest. I wanted to come meet you since it seemed to be very interesting. That’s why I called out to you with a butterfly.” (Julia)

This is pretty sudden.....

But it was a long standing mystery as to how Julia had found our village.

This clears up one mystery.

“And, as for my divine protection?” (Almis)

“Geez. You sure are impatient.” (Julia)

Julia let her face become a little slack.

“That’s right. If I had to give it a name, it would be [Divine Protection of a Great King] I guess (大王の加護). The ability depends on the number of people who trust in you, the ability of that person would grow..... if it’s a man than physical ability and if it’s a woman than sorcery talent. And then, those who also swear absolute loyalty to you, even without a divine protection of their own their abilities will increase. It’s something like that. It’s an amazing ability isn’t it?” (Julia)

.....

.....

Loyalty huh.

I never intended to be sworn to though.

“That’s unexpected. Are you not surprised?” (Julia)

“I have been aware of the divine protection. Though I didn’t know that it spread even to my surroundings.” (Almis)

Incidentally, I don’t know the conditions either.

Well, I guess I’ve gotten used to strange things like this happening.

“So, why are you bringing this up now?” (Almis)

What Julia wanted to talk to me about wasn’t such a insignificant thing... right?

“In truth, I sorta thought it’d be interesting to just keep silent and watch you try to figure it out yourself. But you know, you still haven’t realized so.....” (Julia)

Julia’s words cut into me for a moment.

"Soon, I won't be able to meet with you. Today is the last time. Father's death, it's coming soon. So I decided to get married while my father is alive..... it's necessary that I bear a child. That's why I can't meet you anymore." (Julia)

Julia was crying.

"That's why I am explaining to you now. Since there wouldn't be any more chances to explain. Aaaah, I wanted to see a bigger reaction you know~" (Julia)

Julia said with a bright voice, laughing while in tears.

"Before, I refused when my father told me to quickly find someone." (Julia)

Saying that, Julia got closer to me.

Approaching with tears in her eyes.

"!!" (Almis)

Julia pressed her lips against mine.

Julia's tongue entered my mouth.

She kissed me with a lot of force.

Unable to reject her, I remained as I was.

After what felt like forever, Julia and I separated.

There was a string of saliva between our lips.

"From here on you'll probably get married to various people, right? Since you are cool and strong, and you have the calibre of kings. I'm sure a lot of girls will make a move on you. And you are too kind to refuse them. I also wanted to be part of your harem..... but unfortunately it seems impossible. But at least I can leave behind this memory." (Julia)

Julia turned her back towards me.

“The memory that I was your first kiss.” (Julia)

Julia ran away.

.....

.....

“Damnit!!” (Almis)

I slammed my fist into a tree.

Julia completely had the air of dejection and loss.

Is this okay?

But for now since she forcibly took ‘victory’ for the scramble of my first kiss, she has one win and one defeat.

It has become difficult to gradually reply to all her thoughts.

Perhaps, it may become impossible to answer them all.

I should diligently look over all her thoughts.

From now on, please treat me well.

Her thoughts are very likeable so I want more of them.

By the way, the Rosaith soldiers that were dissed by Almis, had a higher skill level and morale compared to Adernia Peninsula’s standard.

They were the imperial guard so it’s a matter of course.

Almis’ standards had become a little strange since he was too accustomed to his divine protection.

CHAPTER 26

PREPARATION

“Now then, since we’ve got wheat, let’s go ahead and start seriously discussing what we’re going to do about the refugees.” (Almis)

I called the usual members + Yal together to talk.

Anyway, there will almost definitely be a dispute.

But that’s still better than not setting up any countermeasures at all.

“For now I’ll have you build your houses in a slightly separated area from us. You’ll all be living there together. Got that?” (Almis)

“Yes. Regarding that, I’ve got no complaints. Concerning materials...” (Yal)

“I’ll prepare and help you with them. In exchange, help me with the construction of the defense facilities.” (Almis)

“Thank you very much.” (Yal)

Yal lowered his head to me deeply.

The reason I separated our residential areas from the refugees’ is to prevent quarrels.

After all, humans are a species that can only see the faults of those they live near to. On the other hand, when they live a distance away from someone, they can only see their good side.

In addition to that, concerning Lulu and her parents.

It would be dangerous if they ran into each other.

Although, really, I want to help them reconcile... this just isn’t something I can do anything about.

If I was to forcefully have them get together, Lulu would just end up hurt.

However, if they just keep staying away from each other, their relationship won’t get any better.

That is something I need to think about.

"We'll build and perform farm work together as much as possible. Through this our feeling of solidarity will be strengthened." (Almis)

"I agree with that! Since there won't be too much chatter while they are doing farm work, there won't be as many arguments either." (Ron)

Ron agrees with what I said.

When you're put in a new class in school, you're sure to get really nervous.

But when it comes around May to June, those tense relationships suddenly get a lot more relaxed.

At my school we held a culture festival at around that time.

That probably influenced those relations somewhat.

I'm aiming to recreate that phenomenon

"Hey, nii-san. What will we do about training? Will they be doing the same routine as us?"

"...Well, that would be impossible for them. Could I ask you to teach them with care, without treating them as a nuisance?" (Almis)

They're going to have to fight together with us.

While they aren't bad people, that doesn't change the fact that they are the root of this problem.

If they're just going to sit back and have us protect them, that would be a problem for us.

Well, they probably wouldn't complain considering their lives are at stake.

"What will you do about the food? Will it be the same as our portion? Or will you reduce it?"

".....I think that there are pros and cons, but I will make it the same quantity." (Almis)

Since food was borrowed from King Rosaith, there is plenty enough of it.

If so, there won't be dissatisfaction among the refugees if I distributed it equally, right?

Well, it is free food so it is weird to voice an opinion about the same quantity as

our's.....

They have no choice but to accept and endure it.....

"Later, I will hold a banquet regularly to deepen our friendship. There are no complaints about such a policy?" (Almis)

I look around to hear all the members.

Other than Lulu, all the members nodded in assent.

.....Really, what should I do about Lulu?



Now, next is the black powder.

Presently, the materials for black powder have been obtained.

Next, I have to try making it.

It is not particularly difficult to make it. I need to pulverize each material, and simply mix them together.

"It is prototype NO.1 for now. It would be good if I succeed with this....." (Almis)

I just simply mixed an equal amount of each material for now.

I put a small quantity on a rock.

"Hey, Almis. What kind of phenomenon is an explosion?"

"Mmm, the phenomenon is when things burn up at once..... I guess? Since I also don't understand the details, for now I think you will understand if I hit it with the hammer." (Almis)

I strike the gunpowder with the hammer with all my strength. (*pengu: a way to ignite gunpowder in the past was to hit a hammer to flint to make friction to create a spark to ignite the powder.*)

Nothing happens.

Second time.

Nothing happens.....

Eh? Did I make a mistake in the materials?

No no, it is charcoal, saltpeter, and sulfur. Yes, there is no doubt. (*pengu: saltpeter is potassium nitrate*)

In other words, is the ratio wrong?

For now, with the black powder placed on a hill, I insert a long string.

I ignite the string after taking some distance.

The black powder begins to burn vigorously · · · ·

It's no use. (*Pengu: black powder ratio is 75% saltpeter, 15% charcoal, 10% sulfur.*)

“Oh! It burned wonderfully. But, can we defeat them with this?”

“No, this is a failure.....”

Well, it won't go so easily.

I think that the charcoal needs to be decreased further. It has no explosive factor.

Then is it saltpeter and sulfur?

For now, saltpeter quantity is the same, and increase only the sulfur.

Because the quantity of saltpeter is small, I don't want to reduce it at this experimental stage.



Currently, it is black powder NO.66.

As such, it has come to look bomb-ish.

The quantity of saltpeter seems to hold the key.

But, it doesn't explode if there is too much of it. Adjustment is important.

Now, it is good that the black powder is completed, but there is one problem.

“Whinny!!!”

The horse is frightened.

No, I expected the horse to be surprised. Rather, it's better that it is surprised. The enemies' horses will be surprised.

However, I want our horse to be accustomed to it.

I try to make it accustomed to it many times..... but it didn't go well.

Horses are delicate creatures.

It went on a great rampage when I was going to attach the stirrups for the first time.

I can't perform the training frequently.

Therefore.....

"It's alright, it's alright, there is nothing to be afraid of. Settle down." (Lulu)

Lulu strokes the horse's head.

"It's alright, I'm here. See....." (Soyon)

The horse behaved while Soy়on is brushing its body.

"If a male is this..... eh? Female?" (Tetra)

Tetra looks into the horse's stomach.

An excellent sorcerer can put their soul into a beast.

It is possible for a soul and soul to come into contact.

In short, it means that it's possible to understand each other's feelings.

As a horse is a smart animal.

If you speak to it properly it will settle down quickly.

In other words, if you can't train quantity, you should train quality.

Until the real thing, I want the horse to be accustomed to gun powder.

If I begin with the foals, this here won't be hard.....

If that is the case then I don't know how many years it would take.....



Two hawks circle over my head.

They suddenly stop, nose dive and soar.

The two of them seem like they are playing tag. No, they are actually playing tag.
(*pengu: onigokko* – Japanese for tag)

One of them, the hawk with Lulu's soul in it, touches the hawk with Tetra's soul in it.

“Okay! It’s Lulu-chan’s victory!! Change!!” (Soyon)

Soyon called towards the two hawks.

The two hawks land on Tetra’s and Lulu’s shoulder.

Tetra and Lulu whose backs are against a tree open their eyes.

“Blech, tastes bad.....” (Tetra)

“Cough, cough.” (Lulu)

The two people spit out a green object from their mouths.

It’s a poisonous plant called soul detachment grass. Its effect is separating the soul from the body.

Souls don’t usually leave the body unless you die.

However, the method to separate the soul from the body while living exists.

First, you have to skip meals for 2-3 days to weaken the body to a near death state.

After that, you chew on that special poisonous plant – soul detachment grass.

It is possible for anyone to separate their soul from their body if they use this method.

And a sorcerer who has acquired the experience of repeatedly extracting their soul can also extract it without even skipping meals.

Though, it is a different story whether you can return.

For a normal human, the soul is separated from the body when they eat soul detachment grass. And then the soul has about 10 seconds before rising to heaven and can’t come back.

Thus, death.

It is in fact a poison, as 3 to 4 times is considered to be the limit per day.

As this is training, doing more than twice is not allowed.

If you overdo it, antibodies will be made.

Fundamentally, unless a sorcerer's condition is just about driven to the limit, there is always a person to protect the empty body.

There are two reasons.

It is to assist when the sorcerer can't return their soul to their original body by themselves.

And, it is to prevent a different soul from hijacking the empty body and protect it from being cursed.

Although, if you form a barrier to defend against another soul from penetrating, if it's just left for a short amount of time, the soul will not go away and return too quickly.

"Good work. First, have some honey to cleanse your palate." (Almis)

I hand a small bottle of honey to the two.

The two tasted the honey with a blissful face.

"Sorry to overwork you. Because the only sorcerers that are able to soul ride are you girls....." (Almis)

"It's alright. There is no problem." (Tetra)

"I'm glad to be of use." (Lulu)

The two people laughingly answer.

Incidentally, my eyes meet a hawk.

It has turned to look away.

Somehow I seem to be disliked by the hawks that are raised by Tetra, Lulu, and Soyon.

I guess it was wrong to have said to throw them away back in the old days.

These three turned out to be splendid adults now.

According to Julia, it seems that these hawks are larger and stronger than the typical hawks used for soul riding.

In other words, that alone is an advantage.

In an aerial dogfight, it is a big factor on what kind of animal that you are riding.

It is understandable if I remember the fighter planes in modern warfare.

“I have a request for you guys.” (Almis)

When I said so, the hawks stuck out their chest.

They can understand words?



“Hey there, hey there, Almis-san. The items you ordered were prepared.” (Einzo)

Einzo smiled with a grin.

“I’ll make it slightly cheaper. So please buy a lot of it.” (Einzo)

“Thank you very much for that.” (Almis)

His good image rose a little.

“Then, I will confirm it.” (Almis)

Einzo takes the ordered items out as I said so.

It is a big bow. The bow type is the so-called long bow.

“It is the latest bow in Karisha. The arrowhead is iron. There is little equipment that it can’t penetrate in the Adernia Peninsula. But..... can you handle it?” (Einzo)

“Yes. Because there is an excellent archer among my companions.” (Almis)

If it’s Gram, he will manage it.

"Then, there is no problem. I filled the carriage with the same ones. I also packed the arrows." (Einzo)

Einzo-san said so and handed me the long bow.

"Next is the shield. This is made out of wood with iron affixed to it. And, the protective gear is made out of leather." (Einzo)

"Yes, no doubt." (Almis)

I actually wanted iron protective gear, but I was still unable to buy it.

I heard that it costs quite a lot for a quality one.

"Next is iron fragments..... What are you using it for?" (Einzo)

"It is a secret." (Almis)

This will be mixed with the black powder.

It is in order to increase its ability to kill and wound. A bomb by itself doesn't have so much of a killing ability.

"Then, these curse stones. What are you using it for? There are a lot of small ones. Well, originally the small articles aren't marketable so it is good." (Einzo)

"Yes, thank you very much." (Almis)

Fortunately, curse stones that correspond to magic stones which aren't suitable for curses, were very cheap.

These magic stones are used to write the ignition magic formula as a substitute for a fuse.

It is inconvenient to ignite the fuse every time you throw it, and if the fire goes out on the way, it becomes an un-exploded shell.

"A very strong liquor. Is this also an order?" (Einzo)

"Yes. That's right." (Almis)

It's not to be used to drink in a party particularly. It is for sterilizing.

"Then, the last article is to be handled with care." (Einzo)

Einzo said so while putting on gloves. And he handed leather gloves to me.
A small jar is taken out.

"It is aconite poison. Pay attention to not let it touch you because it will be a catastrophe. When applying it on a arrow, you have to wear gloves and please use the method of dipping the arrowhead into the pot. You will die if the poison soaks through cloth and touches an open wound." (Einzo)

"Yes. I understand it well." (Almis)

If there is poison, I can surely murder the enemy.

It's unknown whether it's a little cowardly, but I can't say such a thing.

Even feces and urine is enough to become a poison, but we have too small of a population for that.

I am aiming for a decisive short term battle. Therefore fast acting poison is necessary.

The enemy's main equipment is made of wood.

Then, I can sufficiently penetrate them with an arrow. And if an arrow hits.....

It means that.

Because the longbow has a range of several fold compared to the Adernia Peninsula's bow, so a one-sided attack is possible for a while.

"And this is on the house." (Einzo)

Einzo handed one sword to me.

What is this? There is a grain pattern.....

"The sword is made of Dragon Damascus steel. This metal can only be struck by the

race that lives in the east side of the Karisha country called the People of the Desert. A special metal from the core of a dragon called dragon gold is mixed with iron and is forged in a dragon's flame sac for 3 days and 3 nights to temper it." (Einzo)

Though I don't understand it well.....

In short, isn't it terribly expensive?

"Yes, but I don't want you to die yet. You have not yet taught me the method to manufacture paper. And, I would still like to be your patron in the future." (Einzo)

"Really?..... Thank you very much. Though I can't show you the method of paper manufacture so easily." (Almis)

I laugh and turn my back to exit Einzo-san's store.

".....Fortunes of war" (Einzo)

"Yes, I will return without fail." (Almis)

Author's note:

It is Damascus steel.

There are two kinds in this world: the Damascus steel that does not use dragon gold which is equivalent to the Damascus steel on Earth, and the Dragon Damascus steel that is made by mixing Damascus steel and dragon gold.

By the way, the Dragon Damascus steel ranges from best to worst (Well, even the worst is much harder than ordinary steel).

Dragon gold's quality is proportional to the level status of the dragon.

The Dragon Damascus steel sword was made from dragon gold that was taken from a high level dragon, it is an excellent sword.

The Dragon Damascus steel sword turned out to be a divine sword made out of dragon gold from a myth level dragon.

The Dragon Damascus steel sword which Einzo handed to Almis is an excellent sword.

Though the People of the Desert literally live in the desert, they are excellent at

striking iron in the flame sac that is removed from the high level dragon called Salamander that lives in that same desert.

Einzo heard the story to some extent from King Rosaith, and thought that this fellow might become a big shot as he handed over the sword.

It is an investment.

CHAPTER 27

YAL

“Haaa.....” (Almis)

It's truly troublesome.

Currently, there is a little spark in the village.

In brief, the issue originates from the conflict with the refugees.

Although, relations have not worsened completely. It can be said that a rather good relation has been built.

The refugee's children and the children in our village are often playing together.

It does not matter to children whether they are from the supported or the supporting side.

Besides, the source of the complex relationships is because there are children with former siblings. Though, the children's relations are good.

By the way, for us adults, one part is good, the other part is in disorder.

Our village's group proved to be high in physical ability due to the influence of my divine protection.

Moreover, the refugees are afraid when they see the usual sword training.

They seem to be aware that I have been developing that place and they probably want to build a satisfactory relationship.

Of course I want to build it too.

Therefore, a feast was regularly held. It's drinking.

After all, liquor seems to be an excellent tool for communication, as such we can talk to some degree.

Moreover, I have us do some military training together.

It is in order to fight together when King Ferme comes to attack us.

The refugees understand that it won't end nicely if they surrender to King Ferme. Their position is running away from King Ferme's place anyways.

All the slaves agreed that it is common sense for them to be massacred.

Therefore, they work very hard in training. It's natural because their life depends on it.

The mood will improve as well if they are seen training this hard. The feeling of comradeship will also sprout.

Ron with the spear, Roswald with the sword, and Gram with the bow; each instill their own specialty into the refugees.

Although, the spear is likely to be the main weapon because the sword and bow are difficult to handle.

After all, it seems to be good that there is a common enemy.

His majesty King Ferme..... No, because of King Ferme we ended up living together.
(Pengu: Almis starts out with polite words but change to normal tone)

Well, the next part of unrest is..... in short, the source of the fire.

For one thing, I don't want to hear children saying such things as, "Hey, you're not a person of our group."

However, everyone became silent when I instantly killed the bear that invaded the village with a javelin.

It seems the people don't know how to react, even though I thought with this ability the people will like it. In addition, Ron, Roswald, and Gram show off their abilities as well, and each person who witnessed it had become quiet and obedient.

This doesn't become too much of a problem because Yal persuaded them in various ways.

Well, it is just the minority.

Secondly, this is the number one problem.

There is a faction that wants to reconcile with the abandoned children.

There are three such relations besides Lulu.

They seem to want to reconcile with the children by all means and are rejected by the children regularly.

By the way, Lulu threw a damper on the feast when she dumped liquor over her parents. Thanks to that, nobody was able to talk for an hour.

As there was no help for it, I banned the four former families with such relations from approaching.

But they seem to want to reconcile no matter what.....



"I should have ordered them not to approach you, right? Then what is this?" (Almis)

I look down at the man and woman prostrating in front of me.

They are Lulu's parents.

The two people wanted to reconcile with Lulu at any cost, so they slipped out from the refugee resettlement ward to secretly meet her.

However, even if you meet, it is impossible to reconcile.

The two people got stones thrown at them by an angry Lulu, and a hawk set on them, but they still tried to approach Lulu causing her to start crying.

Gram walloped the two people hard to knock them out and carried them before me. That is how we came to this incident.

Lulu who was crying because the old wound re-opened is being attended by Soyon and Tetra.

I am human.

Therefore, I inevitably give priority to some people over others.

Tetra and Julia are foremost. After that, are those closest to my age who serve as my assistants, Ron, Lulu and the others. Then, it's the rest of the children. Incidentally, Roswald's bride is Lia. Up to here is the line of important people.

As I often talk with Yal who has been gathering up the refugees properly, we are on good terms to some degree. He is likely to be promoted as an important person in a little while.

And then, the slaves who work skillfully. They often exhaust themselves for me. You could say that they are semi-important people.

Next, it is King Rosaith who I am acquainted with to some degree..... Well, my impression of him is falling recently because of the set up. And then, the Karishian merchant Einzo-san. Because he lowered the price when I purchased the weapons, my impression of him is rising a little.

And finally, it is the refugees.

Because the refugees with the lowest priority made Lulu with the highest cry, my mind is not calm.

To be frank, I want to hit them.

Well, it's fine because Gram hit them.

“Don't you have any excuses?” (Almis)

When the two hear me the second time, they say that they will stick together.

"It is a request! Will you please meditate for us?" (Parents of Lulu)

Haa.....

They don't seem to be reflecting. What should I do?

Because they ignored my order first of all, I must give a reasonable punishment. Since I need to think of the future.

However, our village doesn't have laws.

Well, because only children lived here so far.

But tension will run among the refugees if I directly give the punishment.

What to do about that.....

"You people pried open Lulu's old wound. She doesn't even want to see your faces. Lulu gets wounded just by seeing your faces. Do you understand?" (Almis)

"But we....." (Parents of Lulu)

"The reason doesn't matter!! You abandoned Lulu. This does not change. Thus Lulu dislikes you people. This does not change, too. Give up!!" (Almis)

I unconsciously shouted.

Yal enters the room while I was shouting.

Yal approaches calmly, seizes the two people's collars and hits them hard. (check)

“Oi!! Why did you disobey Almis-sama’s order!! Do you know what you did?” (Yal)

“But Ya.....” (Parents of Lulu)

Yal’s fist hits their faces once more.

And then, Yal knelt on the ground, while pressing down on the two’s heads.

“We are terribly sorry. I will pass the punishment. Somehow..... will you please forgive these two?” (Yal)

“.....Then I will drive them out if the same thing happens again. Am I clear?” (Almis)

I said so and leave the room.

Yal’s value rose within me.

Advancing him as an important person was decided.



“Oi, Yal. In fact, there was something I wanted to ask.” (Almis)

“What is it?” (Yal)

Tetra and Yal are walking with me.

“Were you the village headman when the territory was under the reign of Ragou-san?”

(Almis)

"No, my father was the village headman at the time." (Yal)

"Is that so? Well, it is ok in either case. Do you know if the people still swear loyalty to Ragou-san?" (Almis)

"The influential people were all executed..... As such, the people with the position of warriors are all that remain." (Yal)

"Please come in contact with those people. And will you ask them to act in concert if the time comes?" (Almis)

"Yes, well, I will just say this, but... isn't the prospects slim? I do not think that we will win at all." (Yal)

"It doesn't particularly matter. If you can confirm that the loyalty to Ragou-san is genuine, the hatred for King Ferme is certain, and that their character can be trusted....." (Almis)

I whisper into Yal's ear.

"Reveal that Tetra is Ragou-san's daughter." (Almis)

Yal's eyes open widely.

"Listen, including you, only six people know this. Never let it leak. If you leak it..... Do you understand?" (Almis)

"Yes, of course. We are in the position of receiving help from you, we will never return your act of kindness with insult. However..... really?" (Yal)

Hmm, he doesn't believe me.

This fellow knows almost nothing about Tetra.

Eh? That reminds me that I have not seen the concrete evidence, either.

"Hey, Tetra. Can you show me your sacred character?" (Almis)

"Understood." (Tetra)

Tetra said so, turns back, and pulls her clothes up a little.

The sacred character [Wisdom], which signified the family crest, was carved onto her lower back.

"It is surely the Ars's family crest..... There is no mistake....." (Yal)

Yal looks at Tetra's family crest steadily.

Don't look at my bride's back so much.

"Thank you for the trouble. Then, I will infiltrate them." (Yal)

"I'll count on you. You don't need to over do it. I will be troubled if you die." (Almis)

At any rate, this is the only person who can unify the new citizens.

“Please also write a will. Please nominate the next successor.” (Almis)

“I can not write Karishian?” (Yal)

“Tetra and I can take dictation for you.” (Almis)



Yal was visiting King Ferme’s country.

In King Ferme’s country, there are hundreds or more villages ranging in size from 50 to 200 people.

So there are a number of village headmen.

Yal’s village is in the most remote region of King Ferme’s country, so the number of residents are few.

Moreover, Yal became the village headman because his father suddenly died three years ago.

Therefore, most don’t know his face.

Although, you would think that he would become famous as he was the headman of the village who ran away just a little while ago.

But then, there is no need to mind it since he is supposed to have died.

Now, the problem is how we will get in contact with the Ars faction who hold dissatisfaction against King Ferme.

Yal had an idea about a person who might be in the Ars faction.

The name of that man is Volos.

He is a warrior descendant of the former Ars family, he has many achievements in the war against King Domorgal’s country.

When King Ferme rose in revolt, he took leave and stayed in his home.

He had been easily caught because of that.

At first, King Ferme was going to kill Volos.

It is because Volos's loyalty to Ragou Ars seems to be genuine.

But, he couldn't be killed.

The reason is simple.

It is because the soldiers who supported King Ferme's revolt were residents of Volos's territory and appealed for his mercy.

As one would expect, even King Ferme cannot kill him when his supporters appealed for clemency.

Afterwards, Volos was permitted to pledge allegiance to King Ferme, and was relegated to defending the border territory.

In addition to other similar reasons, he judged that it wasn't necessary to kill him because most warrior descendants originally have a low status.

The problem is that I don't know whether the reason why Volos swore loyalty to King Ferme is either because he valued his life or to take revenge.

Nevertheless, Yal believes that he is almost certainly in the Ars fraction.

This is because there is a rumor that he also contacted the other pardoned warrior descendants.

Although, in the end, it is just a rumor.

King Ferme wasn't able to execute him because he wasn't able to collect conclusive evidence.

He frantically denies it, too. (*Darknari: it's Volo denying he is in the Ars fraction*)

Nonetheless, there is no choice but to bet on this.



First of all, Yal came to the village where Volos had been relegated to.

It is near the border with King Domorgal, but there is no great value strategically.

It is such a place.

Therefore, Yal disguised himself as a merchant.

The product is fur and wine, which he received from Almis.

To start, he goes to a small mountain near that village.

And then, he climbed a tall tree that bore fruit..... waited until a villager happened to pass by then he fell.

He forcibly broke his right leg.

The kind resident helped him..... though it was a little unnatural he sneaked into the village.

Then, he fluently chatted using a fake name and birthplace.

And then he asked for the expense of his logging to be paid with his commodities until his leg recovered from the bone fracture.

The resident of the village was very much pleased with this.

This is because the commodities which Yal paid the cost of logging and food with had more value.

Then, Yal comes into contact with Volos through the village headman.

They drank liquor together and became friends.

This way, he understands that Volos is a very good-natures man.

And, cautious.

Even if Yal uses King Ferme and Ragou Ars as a casual topic, he did not speak of any dissatisfaction against King Ferme.

However, only just a little, his expression changes.

Apparently, he is poor at lying.

Thus, Yal is almost certain that Volos is in the Ars faction.

However, there isn't conclusive evidence yet.

More definite evidence is desirable.

However, one unexpected thing happened here.

The recovery of the bone fracture is more earlier than he thought.

Normally, though unpleasant, it takes two months.

But it closed in one week, and he was able to walk in two weeks.

Therefore, Yal went with the lie of it wasn't healed yet and decided to secretly observe Volos in the dead of night.

However, he can't go around Volos's house either.

While Yal has crutches, he walks around the village sneakily.

If the worst comes to past, he could forcefully make excuses that he is practicing walking.

But, evidence wasn't found so easily.

As expected, do I stake out Volos's house even knowing of the danger?.....

While thinking so, Yal looks at the full moon.

And a small shadow crossed in front of the full moon.

It is invisible to normal human eyes, but Yal faintly saw it as he has begun to be affected

by the divine protection.

The shadow was an owl which had something like a pipe tied to its foot.

The owl flew straight to Volos's house.

In the first place, even if it is an official messenger of King Ferme it can't be because they don't use owl post.

In other words..... is it a friend of the Ars fraction? King Rosaith? Or a secret communication with King Domorgal.

In either case, it is certain that he has dissatisfaction towards King Ferme.

Thus, Yal obtained firm evidence.

The next day, Yal took off to Volos's house.

"In fact yesterday, I saw an owl when I practiced walking in secret. It had a letter tied to its foot." (Yal)

When Yal said so, Volos almost instantly pulled out his sword.

The sword barely stopped at the nape of Yal's neck.

"What do you want to say?" (Volos)

"Do you not want to know the whereabouts of Tetra Ars?" (Yal)

At that moment, Volos's face was very much worth seeing, after that, Yal started to speak.



"Are you fine with Almis-dono?" (Volos)

"That's fine." (Almis)

Before my eyes is an amazingly large man. And an old woman carrying a walking stick.
(Darknari: he's being sarcastic)

Beside them is Yal.

And beside me is Tetra.

“May I see it?” (Volos)

“Understood.” (Tetra)

Tetra turns her back towards the large man and rolls up her clothes.

The old woman touches the sacred character on Tetra’s back. It begins to shine slightly.

“There is no mistake. This is the sacred character and family crest which I carved onto the 4-year-old Tetra.” (Old woman)

The old woman asserted.

“Tetra-sama!!” (Volos)

“Woah!!” (Tetra)

As soon as the large man saw that family crest, he kneeled in front of Tetra.

“I’m sorry for my doubt. However..... thank goodness. Truly thank goodness!! For this Volos, there hasn’t been such a wonderful day as this since the defeat!” (Volos)

Woah, a grown man is crying.....

You were adored weren’t you, Ragou-san. Let’s make a visit to the grave sometime.

“Almis-dono!!” (Volos)

“Woah~!” (Almis)

My shoulder was suddenly gripped.

His nails are digging into me!

It's painful, it's painful so get away!

"It's inexcusable! However, thank you very much! Thank you very much for protecting the young lady until now. From now on, all the vassals including me swear loyalty to you." (Volos)

"Ah, thank you. I understand so wipe your tears." (Almis)

I hand him a handkerchief.

Volos wipes his tears with the handkerchief.

Oi, don't blow your nose!

"However, you will not necessarily fight? There is a difference of forces between us. I would avoid war as much as possible. You understand right?" (Volos)

"Yes. I understand that the winning rate for a war is low and we should not start a war as much as possible." (Almis)

"I hope that's true." (Volos)

To the bitter end, my purpose is to protect everyone and this place.

I don't want to become a king or a powerful clan in particular.

I'm just doing this because it is advantageous to win over allies.

"Nevertheless, the facilities are considerably good for a small village." (Volos)

"We put all our effort into construction. It will be complete when I dig a large amount of pitfalls." (Almis)

It has been 10 months since we started.

It was considerably difficult.

“By the way, is there something like a secret weapon?” (Volos)

“Well. Do you want to see? As a matter of fact, it was completed a little while ago.”
(Almis)

I take out the black powder prototype NO.100.

The memorable 100th. It’s a success!

The saltpeter, sulfur, and charcoal ratio is 75:10:15.

And then I put it in an airtight container.

In doing so, it becomes a bomb.

“It was made after 99 trial and errors. I consider it to be the perfect ratio combination.”
(Almis)

It is easy to make black powder.

However, it is very difficult to change this into a bomb with the ability to cause casualties.

It explodes if I give it a strong shock, but only burns when it is set on fire.

Just such a thing is completed.

I put the black powder on the magic formation and put my hand on the formation.

The magic formation begins to shine slightly.

I had Tetra develop this magic formation.

The effect is that it ignites 5 seconds after I pour some mana in.

I leave the place in haste.

Five second pass.

The deafening roar penetrates my head and the ground shakes.

“It is more or less successful for the time being.” (Almis)

I look at the site where the explosion happened.

The gouged ground became visible when the white smoke cleared. The killing power seems to be considerably promising.

“Th-this is wonderful. What sorcery is this?” (Volos)

“It is not sorcery. Well, I did use some sorcery though.” (Almis)

Volos shows a little bit of a frightened expression.

A grown man is frightened. If it is King Ferme’s soldiers, they won’t able to be collective.

“If you have this, victory is certain!” (Volos)

“Hmm, I wonder.” (Almis)

Such a thing is considerably doubtful.

At any rate, the number of enemies is large.

“If war will really happen, will it be two months later?” (Volos)

“Right. Because it is the harvest time. So it would be exactly one year later. There is a high possibility of them coming to collect tribute. I think they will have a bad harvest over there, since this year was colder than average. They would definitely try to forcefully take it. Naturally I will refuse. We don’t have any reserves either.” (Almis)

In fact, I would like to gain 1 more year.....

"The basis is a charge after they break their ranks because of the bomb." (Almis)

The reason why the phalanx is powerful is because the troops assemble in solid ranks.

If it collapses, it is because of that.

In the first place, the phalanx's weak point is that flexible movement is not possible.

Furthermore, those soldiers' skills and morale are low.

If possible I hope that they would withdraw before arriving to this village.

CHAPTER 28

SORCERY BATTLE

Robert Ferme, that is the full name of King Ferme.
His father said this before dying.

“Well, Robert, If you’re a man you must aim for the top.” (Robert’s father)

Robert followed those words.
He increased his influence within the clan and his favorability with other clans.

The Chief Ragou Ars was a man whose only worth was being gentle while the misgovernment continued.
He gradually obtained the trust of the people under him.

And one day famine occurred.

The famine was large enough to make people abandon many of their children. Ragou was unable to find any solution to that.

Naturally.

It’s not that the amount of harvest would increase nor would the bread gush forth from something.

Unfortunately, however, dissatisfaction with the unreliable large clan continued to rise.

“Ragou extorted wealth from the people and is living a luxurious life!! Do you forgive this as it is?” (Robert)

Robert shouted loudly.

Many of the clans and the people supported him.

The rebel army which lead by Robert in no time surrounded Ragou's residence and took it by storm.

He succeeded in taking Ragou's neck.
But there was one problem.

He couldn't grasp the whereabouts of Ragou's wife, his two sons and the daughter.

Robert lead the search with his elite.

He found them as they were trying to escape in the forest, and killed the wife and the two sons.

And raised the sword to kill the last child.

He thought.

(Isn't it too young?)

Robert looked at the little girl-Tetra in front of him.

It did not resemble Ragou at all. He remember it being a very clever child.

The Ars and Ferme families were relatives, and Robert had taken care of the girl.

Naturally, he had no option to keep it alive.

There was nothing to gain from allowing it to live.

He couldn't make the child his wife, as it would hold a grudge.

There was the possibility that he could raise it while he confined it.

It was out of the question to let it go.
But he did not kill it.

He overlooked it.

The child would be killed by the wolves or it might die by consuming poisonous plants.

He kill the husband, murdered the wife and innocent children, but overlooks the youngest daughter.

His behavior seemed mysterious.

Was it him being indebted, or was it with the intention of expiation?

Anyway, he committed the biggest mistake of his life.

“A bad harvest.....” (Ferme)

Ferme sigh while looking at the field.

Even though the harvest was a month away, he understood that something was discernibly bad with the wheat.

Last year’s famine was somehow managed with the tribute from the forest village and the loot from plundering the country of King Rosaith’s.....

I seems to have to do the same thing for this year.

A soldier came in while Ferme was sighing.

He hold a small tube in his hand.

The soldier handed the cylinder to Ferme.

“Is there something wrong?” (Adjutant)

An adjutant asked Ferme.

Ferme broadly grinned and answered.

"It is the carrier pigeon from the rat lurking inside King Rosaith's country. It says that the King Rosaith had collapsed."(Ferme)

After hearing that, the adjutant grinned.

"Well, he won't die. Attack like usual. Nonetheless, it does not take leadership into account. We will attack the Kingdom of King Rosaith." (Ferme)

"However, our war preparations are insufficient."(Adjutant)

The adjutant said.

He grinned.

"What are you saying, don't we have the place that can guarantee the rations for the troops? We can secure meal worth of 3 days. We can plunder it later."(Ferme)

Ferme stares at the forest.

"Until now I have been avoiding a massive march to the forest to avoid the wrath of the Griffon, but now I understand more from the last time. It is clear that he won't intervene as long as we don't violate the forest. He did not complain over people living in the forest or passing through his forest."(Ferme)

"Is there a possibility of the Griffon loving them?"(Adjutant)

"No. If that was the case, the Griffon would have come out when I demanded 80% of the food." (Ferme)

Ferme declared it confidently.

With 80% food being extorted, it wouldn't be funny if the people died from starving, yet the Griffon did not intervene.

In other words, the Griffon was neutral.

"We will pass through the forest and do a surprise attack on King Rosaith's palace."(Ferme)

The adjutant widens his eyes.

I can certainly say so if I go through the forest.

After all the palace of King Rosaith is at a short distance by passing through the forest.

But no one has ever passed through it.

As they were all afraid to anger the Griffon.

At any rate, many people thought that the cause of bad harvest was due to the anger of the Griffon.

Therefore, they abandon the children in the forest as sacrifice.

Even though it actually is the curse of the people themselves.

"But prepare to withdraw if....."

I must always think about the time to withdraw when leading an armed force.

In case of a defeat, we will definitely be destroyed. I must avoid fighting with our back against the wall.

Naturally, that place would be the forest.....

"If that's the case, that place will be the base. The village which became my territory last year" (Ferme)

"But that village has not completely yield to us." (Adjutant)

"If that's the case, just destroy it. We can secure food so it's killing two birds with one stone."(Ferme)

It is too early to decide.

Ferme calls the sorcerers together.

“Go for reconnaissance.”(Ferme)

“Understood” (Sorcerers)



-----Sorcerer leader's POV-----

The three sorcerers used the hawks for reconnaissance.

The soul loading is very difficult.

First, you have to take the soul out of your body while you are conscious.

An average sorcerer die if the soul is unable to come back.

Furthermore, it is necessary for the user's mind to communicate with the creature carrying the soul.

A bond is born by raising it and taking care of it everyday from its infancy.

I came to be able to see the world with the eyes of the hawk and the nose of the dog through rigorous training.

The hawk's eyesight is approximately 8 times better than a human's.

It is the best species to use for reconnaissance.

(The defense is more solid than the last time I come here.....)

The leader thought so while overlooking the village from above.

A deep cavity was dug, and an abatis, a huge wooden fence, was set up in the interior and exterior.

The wooden tower construction seems to be the most troublesome.

It seems to be a facility to shoot arrows, drop stones and pour hot oil.

(The facilities seem to be excessive against wolves.)

In other words it is a defence facility to counter an army onslaught.

The target..... it would be a no brainer.

The three sorcerer strain their eyes and observe the village's state.

I beat the village topography into my head.

(There won't be any problems anymore)

I should be especially cautious..... that there are no mercenaries etc.

The population of the village doesn't seem to have changed.

(We should return)

They chirped once to convey its thought in change direction.

Right when they were about to turn to leave.

“Kya.....”

The screams rose from behind.

As soon as we turned back there was a hawk, larger than ours which was glaring at us.

In the large hawk's talons was a hawk with whom we set out to do reconnaissance together until a while ago.

The talons dug deep into the throat, it can be understood from a glance that it is dead from the fact that it isn't fluttering.

The leader orders the hawk as it cries, to fly away at full speed.

It cannot win based on the difference in physique.

(Shit! Why does it come at such a time.....)

The leader cursed his misfortune

It is extremely rare that I encounter the animal's natural enemy when I'm reconnoitring with an animal.

It's because you concentrate too much on reconnaissance, and the vigilance towards the surrounding tends to diminish.

(You have to escape quickly. If the animal dies while carrying your soul you die there!)

As I thought about this, my other companion flying in front of my eyes has disappeared.

When I looked down, another big hawk fought with my companion.
That companion was desperately trying to escape from the talons.

But resistance was futile, his companion was flung against a tree and killed.

(Two of them!)

The leader desperately flies while being confused.
As it is, my and my companion's life is in danger.

(tsu!)

A chill run through the leader body and he twist his body in the right in a hurry.

As talons of a big hawk pass through there.

(There's three of them!)

Hawks don't form flocks.

I can think two of them have to be coincidental, but the story is different if it is three of them.

(Sorcerer!)

The enemy fly as if to enclose the leader and gradually shrink the distance between them.

(Why! There shouldn't be three high class sorcerers in such a small village! What does this mean..... could they be the sorcerers of the King of Rosaith?)

I must report it in either case.

The leader lower his altitude.

The enemies are bigger then his partner.

The shouldn't be easy to maneuver.

There's a possibility of escape if I go in the forest.

(Just a little more!)

A shock hit the whole body as soon as it entered the forest.

(?)

Something like a rod stuck through my partner's chest.

When the leader understood that it is an arrow, he lost conscious.



—Almis's POV—

“YEAH! I killed it!!”

Gram picks up the hawk which he shot down.

His skill was as wonderful as ever.

“Gununu..... I intended to defeat it.” (Tetra)

Tetra whose soul had returned to her body stood up and grimaced in vexation.

“Though I ate the bitter grass with much effort.” (Tetra)

Tetra said so while taking out Soul detachment grass out of her mouth.

“Fufun. How was it? I made the first success surprise attack!” (Lulu)

“As expected of Lulu. You are the strongest!” (Gram)

Gram shows appreciation for Lulu who returned.

The sacred barrier which I set in the village was useful.

There are various kind for protection against evil, but it informs about animals with soul in it. I set it up beforehand.

When you think that it wasn't caught in the sacred barrier, there are three hawk in the sky.....

To be frank, I don't want our village defense facilities to be seen.

Therefore I had the three go in front.

I have some worry that they can't return because of flying little away from the village.

"Was it alright to kill it? Although we will be fighting each other with this."(Tetra)

Tetra said anxiously.

"It's alright. There actually are cases where the sorcerer is attacked in duty by a natural enemy and dies. King Ferme wouldn't think that the village with a population of around hundred people could have 3 sorcerers. Beside, I believe those fellows intended to attack us when they sent the scouts." (Almis)

I can say that negotiations have already been broken by half.

"Let's take a rest when the meal is over. It's not necessary to do anything."(Almis)

By putting up scared barrier, it's possible handle attacks from several sorcerers.

But only these three people can do soul ride.

I would be troubled if they collapsed.

"Then it is my duty to prepare the weapon next." (Tetra)

"I'm sorry but I have something to do." (Almis)

I must check the pitfall and weapons such as black powder.

".....I will make it up to you when it's all over" (Tetra)

Tetra said so while puffing her cheek in dissatisfaction.

But before that.....

"Yal, could you go to King Roasith's country and call for reinforcement? there wouldn't be any vigor if it's only us." (Almis)

"Understood" (Yal)

Yal said so and head to King Rosaith's country.

However, the report which returned immediately from Yal wasn't very good.

"King Rosaith seemed to have collapsed because of a seizure....." (Yal)

"What! Then the reinforcements?"(Almis)

"That's..... while King Rosaith collapsed, King Ferme moved 400 troops immediately. In addition, neighboring countries and powerful clan seem to be making suspicious movement... they said the reinforcement can be sent three days later....." (Yal)

Three days...

By that time it would all be over, would it not?

Well, it's alright.

It's still within the assumption for the time being.

"Leader! The black powder inspection has completed. There is no problem" (Ron)

"Niisan! The horse condition is all good. We can go anytime." (Roswald)

"The arrow and food storage are safe!"(Gram)

Reports fly out from Ron, Roswald and Gram' mouths.

There is no problem for the time being.

"Ok, the pitfall and scared barrier don't have any problem either. The preparation is complete." (?)

Should we go through the strategy later?

"Prepare the wheat for the time being because it's possible to make peace later."

"Is there such a possibility?"

"There is 40% that the opponent will make a move."

There is 60% that they aren't hungry (standard of 2 fields system)

It is plenty of compromise this way.

It's impossible beyond this.

"Almis-san!" (Yal)

I heard a voice from the gate.

It's Yal.

"King Ferme is gathering soldiers. I don't know the number....."(Yal)

"Will he fight as expected? What about Volos?" (Almis)

"He will raise the revolt while observing the situation."(Yal)

Volos's group is approximately 60 people.

They will be defeated in no time if they fight up front.

You must look at the situation properly before you rise a revolt.



-----Ferme's POV-----

"My King. The sorcerers haven't returned." (Adjutant)

"What is it? Were they attacked by some natural enemy?"(Ferme)

Sometimes hawks get attacked during reconnaissance by natural enemies. They inevitably become negligent of surrounding because the sorcerer's soul takes the lead.

It rarely happened, but I won't said that it never happened at all.

Also the terrain is forest after all. The possibility of being attack is high.

"Or....."(Ferme)

Did the youth call Almis and King Rosaith join hand?

But this is likely low.

If we assume that the three sorcerers were defeated by King Rosaith's sorcerers, then there are three or more that were dispatched to that village.

But Ferme has let Sorcerers reconnaissance many times in King Rosaith's country these days.

And he grasp the number of sorcerers that come out to intercept.

There was never a day where three person were missing.

Moreover, even if they join an alliance, it is unnatural where three sorcerers are placed in such a remote village.

Beside, the possibility of the other thing.....

"Could there be three excellent sorcerers in that village too? It couldn't be"(Ferme)

Impossible. Though there are only nine people even in King Ferme's country.

They might have lost to natural enemy by chance. It's unlucky.

In other words, it is expected that there are still the same natural enemy around that village.

Then, the same thing will repeat again.

Is it safe to give up scouting?

"There are only 6 sorcerers that able to do soul ride..... two of them can successfully defend the country. Four people can go to fight King Rosaith." (Ferme)

The sorcerers nodded that King Ferme instruction and put Soul detachment grass in their mouth one after another.

"The soldiers are ready." (Adjutant)

"Yoshi, you lead 200 soldiers to occupy that village. Take the battle ram this time. It's too excessive to take archers. I'll stay behind with 400 troops. (check) The forest is hard to march into. You will attack King Rosaith's country with 300 and destroy it." (Ferme)

Among the generals who was ordered by King Ferme, the general who was ordered to attack King Rosaith's country directly said timidly.

"My King..... can I at least have another 100? The enemy is at least 1000....." (General A)

"No, maximum is 400."(Ferme)

Ferme asserted.

"King Rosaith's powerful clans have completely shrunk by the last defeat. They won't cooperate with King Rosaith. It is up to 2 thousand that those retainer can move alone by considering the damage received in the last war. King Rosaith's country has to be on a look out for King Ebill's country and King Belvedere's country since they are already incited. Well, if I put the soldiers in the border..... The lowest is 500 for these two countries, you must have at least 1000 to respond." (Ferme)

King Ferme continue while smirking.

"And it is requesting the ambitious powerful clans in King Rosaith's country to move the soldiers. Well, they wouldn't move unless they actually win, I purposely let's King Rosaith find out that there is a revolt movement. That guy has stick 500 with his personal clan on the border territory for defense to direct control over the place. And hundred are assigned to protect the palace..... it's exactly 400."(Ferme)

The generals held their breath unintentionally.

The aim is to occupied King Rosaith's country capital.

And the securing of food.

The odds of winning is plenty.

"Then, I will raise my toast at King Rosaith's palace next. Kanpai!" (Ferme)

Ferme poured wine in a glass and raised it high.

CHAPTER 29

FIRST CAMPAIGN

----- Almis's POV -----

Though the advance company of King Ferme's army arrives at the village, it took them about one and a half days

"You will surrender the village to us. And then we can offer provisions to our 200 soldiers! If so it will save lives." (Commander)

"For 200 men? Is it really only that? Are you not planning to take away everything after occupying the village?" (Almis)

"No way, we just want to secure provisions. I do not want more than that." (Commander)

It's the truth.

But I cannot say how much provisions 200 soldiers will need.

Possibly it is the entire harvest of the village..... Well, if that's the case there is no other way.....

Almis thinks about it just a little bit.

Negotiations are done on an equal basis or under the supervision of a great power.
Will it really be fulfilled? If positive proof doesn't exist, terms cannot be accepted.

The commander... said... provisions.

In other words, the enemy's purpose is the palace of King Rosaith.

Ordinarily they wouldn't march through the forest due to fear of the griffon, so to make surprise attacks they will take this village as a base. That is the enemy's purpose.

Then, if this village surrenders, sparks will start with Julia and King Rosaith.

What is with that?

"Evidence?" (Almis)

"Swear in the name of King Ferme." (Commander)

"Then, it is impossible." (Almis)

The negotiations break down.

Both sides thought that a battle would occur from the beginning, so the negotiations ended quickly.

"Take your time. What can you do with a measly 40 or 50 soldiers? We have 200. We will crush you solely using force!" (Commander)



----- Enemy's POV -----

The commander often observes the village.

There is a high wooden fence dug deep.

There is only one gate.

A village of this size will be difficult to siege with only 200 soldiers.

Since the purpose of the battle is meant to be a short-term decisive battle, it would best to focus their strength upon destroying the entrance.

There are 40-50 enemy soldiers, but if the other inhabitants of the village are counted it exceeds 100.

Nonetheless, the main goal is to secure provisions and a base.

There is no particular reason to massacre them.

Once the enemy general's head rolls, they would most likely kneel if you give them the suggestion of surrendering.

Though there might be many sacrifices, our role is that of the vanguard.

The important thing is to force a surrender by the time the main army arrives. Even if that is not possible, we need to at least weaken them.

Unlike last time, this time there were battering rams and many archers that were also prepared.

"First of all, secure the surroundings of the gate. Then strike it with the battering ram!"
(Commander)

The soldiers who are accustomed to war rush towards the gate while forming ranks.

But suddenly, the ranks began to fall into disorder.

"Pitfalls?..... How troublesome..... we must make a detour." (Commander)

It seems that spears were buried upwards underneath the pitfalls, 20 people were killed, but the pitfalls only caught them at the beginning.

You can tell where the pitfalls are if you look at the ground very carefully.

It's very easy to avoid.

But it would take a lot of time to make a detour and reach the gate.

“Shit. I did not hear of them having such defensive facilities.” (Commander)

The commander complains.

It is necessary to be prepared for sacrifices after all.

Nonetheless, pitfalls are a basic tactic for defense.

Therefore, I am not particularly surprised.

“But if we occupy the village, then we can secure provisions. We must secure it as a base before the main army arrives.” (Commander)

“Yes. That’s ri-..... it’s dangerous!!” (Adjutant)

The adjutant pushed the commander off his horse.

Causing the commander to tumble onto the ground.

“You bastard! What the hell.....” (Commander)

The adjutant was dead.

There was an arrow stuck in his head.

The commander looked around.

“Shit! This arrow pierced through the armor!” (Soldier A)

“It’s made of custom bronze.....” (Soldier B)

“Is it made out of iron?” (Soldier C)

The soldiers are being shot with arrows one after another.

“How could this be! What is our archery corps doing?” (Commander)

“With this distance the arrows don’t reach!!” (Archer Captain)

The archer captain replies.

Though they had no way of knowing, the bows that Almis and the others were using were long bows that were purchased from the Karishian merchant.

The range of it is different from the bows used in King Ferme’s country.

Also, unlike the stone arrowheads that King Ferme’s troops used, they were made of iron.

By shooting from a high tower it is possible to attack from outside the range of King Ferme’s archers.

“Raise your shields! While defending against the arrows in front.....” (Infantry Captain)

The arrow, which was shot at the captain’s head, pierced through his bronze shield.

With the shield that they had relied on being useless, turmoil ran among the soldiers.

“Hey, are you ok?” (Soldier)

"It's alright. It penetrated the armor, but it's just a scratch. It will recover with just some spit!!" (Infantry Captain)

The soldiers who had been struck with the arrows began to writhe on the ground. Naturally those who were struck deeply, but the ones who were only grazed as well.

"A poisoned arrow! Coward!!" (Commander)

The commander shouted.

A poisoned arrow stabs at the feet of the commander in reply.

"Eek!" (Commander)

"Please commander, fall back!!" (Soldier)

The commander fell back so his subordinates could protect him.



----- Almis's POV -----

"Does it seem we will win?" (Villager)

"Yes. The enemy numbers have already been reduced by about 50 people." (Almis)

There were 150 people remaining.

They would probably retreat if they lost another 50.

The enemy's weaponry consisted of bronze spears.

And then they mostly had wooden armor, with some made of leather. The captain class had bronze armor, and finally the commander's was made of iron.

This bow is a long bow I purchased from a Karishian by using up a large sum (of paper).

And the iron arrows were smeared with aconite poison.

Being defeated would be strange.

"The enemy's arrows will soon be in range. Almis-san, be careful." (Gram)

Shouted Gram from the top of the arrow tower.

Although the enemy was confused at first, they began to organize and raised their shields to protect themselves, before slowly but surely advancing towards the village.

"You be careful too, do not think about dying." (Almis)

"I know." (Gram)

Gram answered while grinning broadly.

I am worried, but I have no choice but to leave it to him.

"Ron, you should get back to your post soon. When the enemy reaches the gate..... Do you understand?" (Almis)

"I understand. I'll teach them a thing or two." (Ron)

Ron said as he went back to his post.

Well, I should also return soon.

Otherwise I will get shot by an arrow if I stay.

I gradually began to hear the the footsteps of the enemy, moreover it was accompanied by the sound of arrows piercing the village buildings.

The enemy has about 40 archers.

Because they had more numbers than ours, the more the enemy's attacks are intensified, the less gaps there are to shoot.

While Gram and the others hid behind large iron shields, they found gaps and preferentially shoot at the archers.

The progress of the battle has tilted in the enemy's favor.

.....For now.

“Leader! The enemy seems to have gathered around the gate!” (Ron)

Ron reported happily.

“Ok, do it!” (Almis)

When I say so, Ron grins and nods.

He held something similar to a spear in his hand.

Ron calls out to his nine subordinates.

“You guys! Do you have your bomb spears? Do it like you did in training. Absolutely do not hit the fence, you hear? If you fail, you will be castrated!!” (Ron)

Ron calls out as he holds a bomb spear..... a spear which was prepared with black powder fastened to the spearhead.

When Ron stood ready with the spear, it began to shine faintly.
The magic was invoked.

“One, two, three, haa!!” (Ron)

Ten spears flew over the wall at the same time Ron called out, and fell onto the soldiers flooding outside the gate.

They ignited at the same time they landed.
The black powder caused a massive explosion.

The arrows from the enemy all cease immediately.
White smoke rises, as I hear lots of screaming from the other side of the wall.

“Ok, it’s a success. Prepare the second volley!” (Ron)

Ten spears impacted on the enemy once again.

More screams rise.

“I guess that’s good. Stop. I will go, Roswald.” (Almis)

“Understood. Big brother.” (Roswald)

I straddle the horse Roswald brought.
And lined up besides Roswald.

There are six members of the cavalry, including me and Roswald.

“Open the gate! While I charge, Gram and the rest, stop shooting arrows! Ron, you guys continue from there!!” (Almis)

The gate opens.

Then we charged.

“Woah, this is horrible.” (Almis)

The situation outside of the gate was more severe than I thought.

The corpses were scattered about and looked like crushed tomatoes.

The corpses looked so wretched it made me question if some of them were human.

I realized again the frightening things I made.

When I thought about if my enemy used black powder, I felt a chill.

We have to keep the recipe secret.

The enemy in the noise and white smoke was plunged into chaos by the sudden death of their comrades.

There is no need to do anything anymore, and yet.....

“I will attack the enemy’s commander!!” (Almis)

I call out and charge into the chaos of the enemy.

There was no need to swing my spear.

Because when the enemy saw my form they gave up and opened up a pathway.

I had basically won already.

Before long I will pierce through the enemy's troops.

There is no need to charge again.

The white smoke begins to clear, allowing me to see the enemy's garments.

Most soldiers had wooden and leather armor, and some wore armor made of bronze.

"You, over there mounted on a horse and wearing iron armor! You must be the enemy commander!" (Roswald)

Roswald kicked his horse's abdomen as he sped towards the man who seemed to be the enemy commander.

The enemy commander was frightened and began to escape.

"Like I'll let you go!!" (Roswald)

Roswald then hurled the spear he had been carrying.

The spear arced in the air and struck the enemy commander's back.

"Roswald has defeated the enemy commander!!" (Almis)

When I shouted so, my allies cheered in response

At the same time, the enemy fell to the ground in defeat.

It's a victory for the the time being. As I had said.

Though in truth I had thought about using guerilla warfare in the forest, when the enemy sieged they had concentrated on the gate, but we won so it's good!! Did it become easier at the moment of the explosion, I wonder?

As soon as I thought so...

CHAPTER 30

It is about the same time that the armies of Almis and King Ferme clashed. There was another battle going on near the border of King Ferme and Rosaith's country.

"Well, the enemy's morale seems to be high..... Maybe cutting the supply of grains and starving the soldiers if they don't fight well could be the reason. Its troublesome!" Bartolo sighs.

"How much is the strength of the enemy?"

"It is 300 which includes about 50 light infantries and no signs of a cavalry."

Listening to the explanation of the magician, Bartolo nodded with satisfaction. We have 100 more men than them.

We will win if we fight normally.

However, in the previous battle we lost while having double the number of forces..... that was just the last commander was incompetent.

Bartolo is not incompetent.

"It is troubling for the cavalry. What is that formation?"

"It is a typical phalanx formation, the elite including the enemy commander seems to be on the right side"

"Well, it's the same as the last battle, it's brave to fight the commanders themselves with the most dangerous right side."

Bartolo drinks his alcohol one last time.

Phalanx formation has a shield on the left hand, defending themselves from the left side with a shield.

Therefore, the right side which is not protected with a shield becomes unprotected.

So it is basic tactics to place the elite on the right side.

Commander of the kingdom of Ferme is a very bravely man, he wields his spear on the right side.

In the last battle, the commander was defeated by right side of the enemy who fought by fighting through the left side and turning to our side as our side was kept in hold by those shields on the left side.

By the way Bartolo does not feel like fighting in such a dangerous place.

By far the safest place to drink will be the place to take command at while watching over everything.

That person can see the whole battle from behind.

"Good, the strategy is, all the armies to advance from the left towards you. I am winning in numbers. If the strategy succeeds we will definitely win."

Bartolo laughs while grinning.



"What is the formation of the enemy?"

"It strangely seems to concentrated on the left side."

The magician that had just placed his soul inside the hawk explains to the commander of the king of Ferme.

"Perhaps he was discouraged in the last battle, before the enemy lost because we annihilated the left side of the enemy. It is wary of it. All of them are stupid. The weakest point, would be meaningless if the right side is neglected."

The commander says as amazed.

"So, is the enemy's commander on the left?"

"It seems to be behind, I confirmed that he is drinking right now."

The commander burst out laughing at the explanation of the sorcerer.

"Before the battle it is quite dangerous to drink. And staying at the back? Coward! The king of Rosaith is really poor. Well, I will stop the strategy of inviting the enemy into our territory little by little, instead let's just break this by force!"

Everyone believed this to be an easy victory for the king of Ferme.

"Come now, let's go to victory for King Ferme!" Commander held a spear in his hand and moved into action.



Battle begins with a light infantry..... attack by archers and spears.

And since that is over, the decisive battle by heavy infantry is carried out.

Once the battle begins, heavy infantry cannot move as you want.

It can only kill the enemies in front of it and continue fighting until it dies. That's it.

"Come on, all troops advance"

"All army, follow me!"

Bartolo and the commander commanded the same at the same time.

The first conflict was the left side of King Rosaith and the right side of King Ferme.

Both armies collides violently.

"Die!"



(Enemy commander POV)

The Commander wields his spear.

He is the highest ranked general in King Ferme's country. And the soldiers directly under his command are the strongest elite unit of the king of Ferme.

I will kill Rosaith's soldiers one after another.

But.....

"Shit, how many are the enemy numbers!!"

The Commander begins to get impatient.

Killing after killing, the soldiers in the back row fill up the hole.

There is no gap.

However, despite that, it is truly an elite unit, to be able to gradually push the army of King Rosaith.

Until this time.

"Come now, rear guard, go."

Bartolo drinking out instructions.

From the back row, the elite troops of the King of Rosaith..... elites who are supposed to protect the palace originally come out in the front row.

They were said to be defeated by Almis, but they were made to fight against Ron. By no means were they weak at all.

That was only due to the divine blessing of Almis that made Ron win.

Without a doubt they are the elite.

A soldier who reports to the commander is strong.

However, after repeatedly fighting in the battlefield, he seems to be exhausted.

Soon the commander can see his elites dying as they are pressed by the side of Rosaith's kingdom.

The Commander might be losing right now.

But he still had some room.

That's the enemy's right side.

The enemy was concentrating on their left side foolishly, even a common soldier could tell that they must concentrate on the right side.

However, their right side was poor and was only a decoy.

Even though Rosaith's army did not fall for it but if the left side of King Ferme's army breaks the right wing of King Rosaith and wrap around to the side they had a chance.

The enemy commander smiled.



"Such luck!"

Bartolo says while drinking.

And look at the right side of my country.

The right side was still alive and well. It seemed like no battle had occurred in the first place.

Bartolo ordered to concentrate the attack on the left overall. Due to their left side, the right side is significantly delayed and were not yet ready to engage the enemy.

"You do not have to fight if the right side is weak."

Bartolo laughed grinning and threw away the emptied bottle.

"Come on now"



(Enemy commander POV)

"Fuck !! What is the left side doing!! " Commander shouts.

But the spear of the Rosaith king's soldier attacks in reply of those words.
Desperately the commander parries it.

However, there are limits for people.

He has been fighting since the battle began.

People cannot concentrate for a long time.

The spear of the enemy strokes the commander's cheek.

Starting with that, the movements of the commander become more and more dull and cuts started to increase.

A spear cuts into the belly of the commander's officer.

A number of spears now concentrate on the commander.

"Eliminated the enemy!!"

Someone from the guard's shouts.

Starting with that, the right side of King Ferme was overwhelmed.

Suddenly the left side of King Rosaith went around to the side, attacking the side of

King Ferme from the right.

Faced with such weaknesses, the King Ferme's army was completely destroyed.



"Yo-ya !! This will increase the territory! I did it!"

Bartolo shot up in joy.

CHAPTER 31

About 50 people were taken as prisoners.

And about 100 were killed during the fight.

From the enemy 200, 50 people seem to have ran away.

Also, from the information received from the captured captives, I understood some of the enemy's strategies.

After all, it seems that the enemy was not aiming for our village but for the capital of Kingdom of Rosaith.

If you went from this side of the forest and headed west you could walk right into the country of Rosaith.

This is close to the city of King Rosaith, so if you control this place you can launch a surprise attack.

Although many people do not enter the forest, King Ferme seems to be not fearful of Griffon and took such a bold step. And it turned out that 400 troops commanded by King Ferme were headed towards here.

As expected 400 seems to be tough.

"Are there any dead or injured on our side?" (Almis)

I ask a while a little nervous.

"No one died. There are ten injured people, five of them were shallow wounds, three were slashed by enemies, the other two had a broken bone"

Ron reported.

It was good..... no one seems to have died.

"Show me the injured, we need to treat them" (Almis)

I'm not a doctor, but I can tell if it is a simple injury or needs some treatment.

Scrape and abrasion had to be washed with alcohol and clean cloths.

Fracture only required firmly fixing the bones at their right place and let it heal.

For the cuts and slashes, simply holding the wound together by a bandage was enough.

Humans in our village are strongly influenced by the protection of my divine blessing, so no one will not die from such wounds.

"Well, the next thing is 400 soldiers led by King Ferme....."

It will not be as easy as it was a while ago.

"I'll need to explain the circumstances to King Rosaith again, maybe he could be awake by now, I will go agree to come under his umbrella if I can move back the enemy reinforcements"

"Tetra, Soyon. I am sorry about this but can you go do some reconnaissance? While, Lulu go and report to Volos about our victory over here. Please be careful."

"I understand "

"Yes!"

"OK !! "

The three go to get the soul release grass.

Now, we need to prepare for the next move we are going to make.



(King of Ferme's POV)

"Your side was defeated?"

Ferme doubted his ears.

"Yes.... suddenly there was fire, the soldiers started to blow off one after another....."
(soldier)

"Is there such a magic?" (Ferme)

Ferme asked the magician.

"I have never heard of such a magic, otherwise it would had been a big deal."

" Is that really the case?" (Ferme)

Ferme overlooks the soldier in front of him.

The soldiers seem to tremble with a blue face.

"The soldiers seem to be telling the truth, you can tell by their shivering expressions that they are scared."

Ferme placed his hands on his chin and debated about this "new magic".

"There is a serious problem!!" A military soldier arrives at King Ferme's side.

"What's wrong?"

"Rebellion! The Ars factions have fueled farmers and they have revolted against us!
Furthermore, the capital is under attack from 50 soldiers and 150 farmers!"

(TL: Ars faction as in the people who still followed the previous lord of the area Ragou Ars)

"What about the 100 soldiers who were defending!! "

"We don't know! They were suddenly wrapped in flames and blown off, I do not understand why....."

Ferme clicks his tongue.

"We must retreat! It seems today we won't be able to kill Rosaith's king, it's his lucky

day"

Just as Ferme said this he stands up and straddles his horse.

It was enough if he advances at full speed from here.

The defense of the city is not so weak.

"There is an urgent message from the frontlines"

" What's up this time?"

"The 300 advance troops have been defeated! The army of King Rosaith has broken across the border!"

Dizziness attacked Ferme.

"Fucking hell!! Hurry! We need to go back!"

In a hurry the Ferme Army begins to withdraw.



(Almis POV)

"Almis! King Ferme has begun to withdraw his troops suddenly!"

Tetra, who returned from reconnaissance, informed me.

"Well..... Maybe the army sent to fight with King Rosaith's army lost and as a result Rosaith's army broke through the border?"

But in the last battle the King of Ferme won with 500 against a 1000 of Rosaith's troops....

How was the invasion reversed so easily?

Even if Ferme is instead invaded, there is a long distance to cover to reach the capital. If King Ferme made a surprise attack on the capital of Rosaith, then the army of King Rosaith will not be able to come back in time, so in this case you should hurry and aim to become King of Rosaith. If it is Farne's personality then it seems he will aim for that.....

"Did the rebellion happen?"

"Maybe it did or did not?"

"Is Volos alright then?"

"With your plan, because you gave them some black powder, I think that if they use it effectively, they will be able to win enough like us....."

Perhaps, they would be able to even besiege the palace.

The Kingdom of Ferme is a small country with a population of 30,000.

Even with the few stone walls they have for protection, they won't be enough to hold back the rebellion.

Their defensive facilities should be wooden.

It can be easily blown away with sufficient gunpowder.

Well, as the number of the rebelling troops is small, they might lose if the army of King Ferme returns.

"There is also the possibility that King Domorgal may attack..... he is in the middle of fighting King Gilberd, so I do not know if he can afford to intervene."

Kingdom of Domorgal is more than three times the Kingdom of Rosaith. A powerful country with a huge national strength.

It would be possible to send troops to King Ferme's country to some extent.

While thinking this, a hawk comes down.

It's Lulu.

"Almis-san! Volos has already started revolting! It seems that we can occupy the capital

after a while, and the army of Rosait has also invaded the Kingdom of Ferme."

"Is that so?.... that is as I imagined. Thank you. "

And, I think do we really need to fight in such a situation?

"Leader, you don't want to pursue them?"

"Well..... do we have to pursue them?"

When I said that, all eyes gathered on me.

"Either way, if king Ferme's country perishes or not it will be a big blow to them. They would not be able to take military action for a while. We can negotiate in the dominant position if we try to repel the enemies once....." (Almis is not the one speaking here but someone else)

"That's useless!"

Soyon lifted her voice. While some were moving their heads vertically in her support.

"Wouldn't we have to take all capable hands to fight?" Ron chips in support

"Yes and your life would be in danger too....." (Almis)

As soon as I started to say so, I get a severe headache.

My visibility gets wobbly and rocked.

"Ouch!" (Almis)

"Are you alright?"

Tetra rocks me anxiously.

"It's okay"

My Headache gradually calms down.

"We will do it as everyone says. Prepare for the chase. If possible we will defeat King Fermes to cut the root of the evil!! Begin preparations immediately."

Ten people will be left behind to monitor the captured POWs.

I bound them with a rope properly and gave the prisoner guards weapons so it's okay for ten people.

Speed is important this time.

For the purpose of short-term decisive battle, we do not bring much food with us.

Instead, we will head at full speed.

"Should we wait for the reinforcements?"

"We do not have the time to wait.... I will write a letter, Soyon will deliver it to Yal through a hawk"

" I understand !"

Soyon will again have to put her soul into the hawk to carry out the task.

Actually it's not a good idea to do it over and over..... but it can't be helped right now.

"Whichever way, I cannot afford to hold my hand here, King Ferme is bad news and we need to make sure he dies to avoid trouble later."

As long as he lives, we are in danger.



By the time Yal arrived, King Rosaith was awake.

It was thanks to the Shamans who nursed him back to health.

" I'm sorry, I cannot send reinforcements." (Rosaith)

"Why is that !!" (Yal)

Yal cried out unintentionally and shouted.

"There is no need to send reinforcements now, because the army of King Ferme is already retreating."

"Is that right!?"

Yal yells loudly.

King Rosaith laughs with a grin.

"By passing through the Roman Forest, we intent to rush into the capital and lay our assault..... This is a game Ferme boy likes to play. I had already predicted Ferme's route but only the response was delayed because I collapsed. A hawk had already been released with a message telling about the enemy's retreat. There are three reasons for Bartolo to break through the armies of king of Ferme and be able to start our invasion. It was their over confidence in attaining victory at the Roman Forest against your village, the fact that a rebellion has just begun and King Ferme wasn't at the front lines himself as it was dangerous for him. Anyway, this shall be the end of Ferme's ploy." (Rosaith)

"Now there is one less thing to worry about if I were to die one day" says king Rosaith happily

".....I am going to return back to Almis then." (Yal)

"Can I ask this one thing from you?"

"What is it?"

"Why do you swear loyalty to that man? You possess quite the negotiating ability. Do you not want come to me? "

Yal was ready for such a question.

"It is fine, there is a great deal about Almis and he saved our lives so I intent to repay with my life as an equal"

Yal said so and exited.

King Rosaith looks interestingly at his retreating back.



It took about a day to arrive at the Kingdom of Ferme.

"Is the capital city of Ferme Kingdom about an hour from here?" (Almis)

"Yeah"

Tetra nods.

Anyway, this village is terrible.

I can see a village spreading between my eyes.

The peoples' eyes are dead.

There are no noises even when a group 50 armed men comes.

Do you think they are accustomed or do they think it's useless to react?.....

"Can I ask you a question?"

I detain a woman who was passing nearby.

"What is it?"

"There seems to be only a woman in this village. What happened? "

The woman answers my question.

"..... saying that King Ferme needed soldiers..... My father was driven out to the fight with Kingdom of Rosaith five years ago and my husband died two years ago. From my 5 sons, 3 died in a war a year ago, the other two were taken by King Ferme a few hours ago.... "

The woman breaks in tears as she replies.

"Do you came to kill King Ferme? I beg of you to please kill that king and avenge my father, husband and sons !!"

The woman said while crying and kneeling down.

Looking around, other women surrounding us were also bowing their heads down.

".... I know.... do not worry, I will kill him."

When I answered, the women started watching us with eyes one might look at with to a hero or something.

Huh, the reason to kill King Ferme has increased.

"I want to ask something from you then."

Tetra speaks while looking around at the women.

"Do you regret that you killed the former lord, Ragou Ars?"

The women respond to the question.

"The former lord was a messiah....."

"The former Lord didn't had these much taxes....."

"There was no war at the time of the former lord! "

"We were deceived by that Ferme!!"

"Almis, human beings like this..... hypocrites"

".... but still I will save them "

Tetra seemed dissatisfied, but still embraced me a bit gladly.

Ten minutes of walking and a group of soldiers was spotted far away.
Is that the army of King Ferme?
Have they finally caught up?

"All men, prepare to figh..."

"Wait!"

Tetra caught me by my hand.

And Tetra narrows her eyes and looks at their flag.

"That is the flag of the army of Rosaith's king"

"That was close, this could had become something serious"

The hypothesis reached by me and Tetra was that the army of Rosaith broke through the army of King Ferme and had begun their own invasion.

"Well then I'll be going Nii-san." Roswald said so while kicking the horse's belly and running to the Rosaith's army.

I wish if the general knew about us.

If they did not know, the explanation would be long.

A few minutes later, Roswald came back.

"Did you come because you want to do a joint attack with this commander Bartolo"

Bartolo?..... Ah, that person?

It reminds me.

That drukn guy we met before.

"Hey, Almus..... I wonder if it is?.... this is funny. When we broke through the enemies two days ago we came here in a hurry..... Why did you who started advancing only yesterday made it on time with us? " (Bartolo)

" Our feets are quick " (Almis)

This is the cheat of my divine blessing!

There is no need to worry.

"Oh, yes..... Well, it was a good thing that we could join together.... By the way, is the rebellion that is happening now is it because of you?"

"We only gave them a little gift..... of weapons and a leader to fight for" (Almis)

" Ne..... " (Bartolo)

Bartolo stares at the tetra next to me.

"You should act with the rebel army" (Bartolo)

"Because it's dangerous, I will forgive you"

I do not know if it will succeed.

The most important thing for me now is tetra and my own men.

It is because it is convenient to defeat King Ferme who tried to hurt my people that we fueled this revolt.

If Tetra is handed over to the Rebel Army, it will overturn the situation.

"By the way, you probably will become a clan if you win this war, maybe you would probably be responsible for most of the place where King Ferme ruled over."

"Is that so? Rosaith kingdom is a coalition government of different powerful class, wont the other clans complain? "

" Where the hell are they right now on this battle field? Right now the army that I am leading is King Rosaith's own forces and my soldiers. Furthermore, including the rebel army, if you regard yourself as the same power, it is about 250. We are four hundred and you have also made a great achievement, in addition to which you also have

legitimacy." (Bartolo)

I also have some greed. I would like to get things I do not have.

But I have never done territorial business.

"A good powerful clan leader..... and then we shall be your aides! Hey, leader. I want a land with a lake." (Ron/Roswold don't know which one said this)

"How do you know the rebels will succeed? Say these kind of things after the war is over, you are raising a death flag otherwise "

"Seriously? I'm getting a child born"

Bartolo also joined in while pointing his finger towards his face.

Those guys, they all are raising a bunch of death flags here.

"Once the war is over I'll marry Almus" (Tetra)

"Hey, do not say such things right now!"

I will die at this rate from my own death flag.

Almus holds his forehead as he once again has some headaches.

【 INTERMISSION 1 】

ONWARDS, TO THE ADERNIA PENINSULA!

CHAPTER 32

“Listen, this is serious. How many sorcerers do you have? Ah, I’m talking about sorcerers who can use ‘Soul Ride’?” (Bartolo)

“Three people. According to Tetra, King Ferme had nine magicians who could use ‘Soul Ride’. Three of them were taken down in a surprise attack.” (Almis)

I answered and Bartolo gave a satisfied nod.

“Really. We’re bringing in five. Two of King Ferme’s sorcerers are with him. That leaves four remaining sorcerers...” (Bartolo)

Bartolo rests his chin on his hand.

“Okay, let’s do this. We will send three to the rebel army, the three of you and the rest will devote themselves to breaking the enemy’s barrier.” (Bartolo)

“Okay. That’s fine.” (Almis)

There are two types of barrier.

Anti-magic barriers that prevent witchcraft and physical barriers that reinforce substances.

The barrier in this case is a physical one.

Substances reinforced by magic are of moderate strength and become obstacles when destroying defensive equipment.

That being said, it’s only moderate.

If it was a stone wall, then it would be a threat, but it’s just wood.

It is evident through experimentation that the barrier can be destroyed with gunpowder.

After all, the barrier only has the effect of reinforcing defensive equipment.

We gathered together and started our advance.

After traveling for a while, the hawk returned.

It landed on the shoulder of the sorcerer riding in the wagon.

The sorcerer opened his eyes.

“I’ve delivered it.” (Sorcerer)

“Okay, by the way, did the battle begin yet?” (Bartolo)

Bartolo questions the sorcerer who nods deeply.

“Yes. The rebels have already attacked the capitol and sieged the palace. King Ferme is planning on attacking them. The rebels are in a sticky situation. When we were returning, we had to engage the enemy’s sorcerers and defeat them.” (Sorcerer)

I wonder if King Ferme is attacking the city.....

It’s the opposite state.

“This is our chance. If we attack now, we can catch them in a pincer attack.” (Bartolo)

“Ah, but the magician we spared for the destruction of the barrier has become useless.....” (Sorcerer)

We increased our marching speed.

“By the way, aren’t your men exhausted. What kind of training do you do?” (Bartolo)

“Nothing in particular. Isn’t it good enough that they hunt every day?” (Almis)

“I guess so. Alright, let’s try hunting in the future to train our men. By the way, can we hunt in the Romano forest?” (Bartolo)

“Yeah. The Gryphon’s territory is deep in the forest. As long as you don’t hunt in the depths of the forest, you won’t face the wrath of the Gryphon. Even if you do find yourself deep in the forest, you won’t be killed without a warning. The Gryphon is a generous one.” (Almis)

"Seriously!? That said, the King of Ferme did march his army through Romano forest. We seem to have had a terrible misunderstanding....." (Bartolo)

Bartolo drops his shoulders.

Of course, the reason why he was so dejected was because he had missed out on hunting all the beasts in Roman forest.

But can't having too much fun be a bad thing?

The Gryphon has a short temper.



(Almis point of view)

On top of a small mountain.

The sound of battle can be heard from below.

Overlooking the city of King Ferme.

Two flags are swaying heavily.

"I'm going to do some reconnaissance. There are no more magicians who can watch for an enemy's attack. Our surprise attack will definitely succeed."

"Oh, that's dangerous."

I saw the enemy's lookout approaching us and pushed Bartolo's head down.

The lookout quickly averted its gaze.

"Hey, it hurts. I hit my jaw against the ground."

"Okay, let's assault them quickly!"

Bartolo and I descend from the mountain.

Then we issue commands to the hidden soldiers.

"Alright, get into formation!"

The soldiers formed up into ranks under Bartolo's command.

We also followed Bartolo's example and formed up.

"Hey, why are you better than us?" (Bartolo)

"Since we're all like family, we work well together." (Almis)

It's easy to form a formation.

The difficult part is to move while in formation without breaking ranks.

Since the soldiers drafted from farmers have never worked together, they must be trained. But we had that from the start.

"...I might lose if I attack you..." (Bartolo)

Bartolo mutters while watching us.

There are three hundred and fifty men here.

Whatever you think, I think Bartolo would win...

"We'll charge first!" (Almis)

"Damn... I don't want you guys to hog all the credit... you really act quickly..." (Bartolo)

Bartolo glares at me feeling frustrated.

You've had enough credit.

I don't think there is a reason for you to get anymore.

It isn't as if we want the credit anyway. It's much more important to preserve the lives of our men.

However, it's troublesome when Bartolo is in the lead. For a variety of reasons.

We advance to avoid disturbing the formation.

We're getting close enough to see the enemy. We've probably been noticed.

We speed up our advance.

"Let's go! All troops, charge!" (Almis)

We all charge at once.

I couldn't stop even if I wanted to, I would die. I would be crushed from the back.

They seemed to have noticed us, the army of King Ferme begins to shake in fear.

The rear of their formation turns their spears towards us.

Do you feel like taking it?

Is it King Ferme?

They formed up quickly.

However.....

"Alright, get the explosive spears ready!" (Almis)

I raised the spear I had in my hand.

My companions who were in the front row with me raised their spears one after another.

"Release!" (Almis)

The spears drew a parabola and landed on the army of King Ferme.

The ground greatly shook.

The enemy soldiers who had been waiting with their spears at the ready were wrapped in a white smoke.

It's going to be a mess.

I mean, you're dead because of a direct hit.

Ron, Roswald and Gram lined up beside me.

"Take the King's head!!!"

I went into the white smoke.

As you can imagine, the enemy was in chaos.

They couldn't even wield their spears.

They were no longer in formation, they just ran.

But it's difficult to find King Ferme.

Suddenly, I see a man wearing luxurious clothes in my sight.

It's not King Ferme, but I am certain it is someone important.

"You there! Commander! I'm here for your head!" (Almis)

I strike with my spear towards the luxurious bastard.

"Well, come get it!"

Shouted the luxurious clothed man as he parried my spear with his sword.

"Okay!"

I beat down the sword with my spear. The sword made of bronze was broken in half.

Sorry.

The difference in our weapons and in our strength is too great.

Why don't you hate God if you hold a grudge?

"I did it!"

I felt an intense pressure from behind.

Looking back, a soldier was swinging his sword.

How tasteless!

“Die!!”

The soldier falls to the ground.

An arrow is stuck in his forehead.

“Are you alright, Almis?” (Gram)

Gram came forward on his horse while holding a bow.

Ron and Roswald came up behind him on theirs.

“That was a little too dangerous, don’t you think?” (Gram)

“Yeah, sorry. You saved me, thanks. By the way...” (Almis)

I stared at the Longbow in Gram’s hand.

“You... who uses a Longbow in a battle like this, and on horseback too.”

“So? What’s wrong with that?”

“No, nothing, it’s fine.”

At the same time as I withdraw, an enemy soldier slashes at Gram.

“Die!!”

“You’re dead!”

Gram calmly grasped an arrow in his hand and stabbed it into the eye of the enemy soldier.

That must hurt.

That's just wrong.

You should have just used your spear from the beginning.

"It's normal for Gram to be this weird. Let's go look for King Ferme. I will go first."

Ron kicks the stomach of the horse while saying so and disappears into the enemy.

We chased after him.



(King Ferme's point of view)

A little bit back in time.

"Fuck, why did the capitol fall?"

Ferme glares at the flag with the crest of the Ars family on it.

The defensive structures have burn marks all over them.

Ferme had left a hundred soldiers, they even dug trenches and there's a wall around the capitol.

The barrier was even multiplied and should have been strengthened.

"I'm sorry, suddenly flames..."

"I don't care about your excuses! We'll get it back once our pincer attack is complete!"
(Ferme)

Ferme ordered all of his soldiers to attack.

The number of his soldiers had increased to six hundred because he had drafted more on the way there.

However, morale was low due to that.

"Do not go anywhere."

"Why are you so demoralized?"

"You know, I really want to hear why."

Suddenly, the appearance of a girl floats into King Ferme's mind.

The girl he once let go.

If only...

No way.

King Ferme shakes off the bad memory that came to mind.

It's time.

The soldiers in the rear begin to make a buzz.

At the same time, the earth echoes in King Ferme's ear.

"What happened?" (Ferme)

"It's serious! Rosaith's army is behind us!" (random officer)

"What did you say!?"

Ferme is panicked for a moment.

But he calmed himself in an instant.

"Order the soldiers in the rear to intercept!"

Ferme orders his commander.

Ferme says to his officers and guards.

"This country is already lost, I will flee to King Dommergar. We will try to gather our strength there to retake the country!"

Ferme got on his horse and rode to leave the battlefield with his guards.

But as soon as he began to flee, a loud roaring sound occurred.

His forces quickly fell into chaos.

“Fuck, this is the fire and smoke they were talking about... It’s troublesome!!”

Ferme desperately ran.

The front is no longer collapsing.

He couldn’t even waste a moment.

“Hurry! Until the horse collapses, oh!!”

A deputy screams as his horse falls.

When Ferme looks back, there are four horses charging towards him.

Among them is a young man whose name is Almis.

The soldiers around Ferme are shot one after the other.

Ferme stops.

“On my own..... You’ve often disturbed my dream. You guys are also companions!”
(Ferme)

Ferme readies his spear and charges Almis.

Almis attacks with his sword of Damascus steel.

Both spear and sword connect.

“Fuck.....” (Ferme)

Ferme is groaning and fell while staring at Almis.

Almis’s sword is stabbed deeply in his belly.

“Your mistake was not making the best use of Tetra. Well, I am grateful that I could

meet her because of that." (Almis)

"Haha, I guess so..... that was a mistake....."

Ferme looks disappointed as he laughs.

"You should be happy then. I missed out." (Ferme)

Ferme says, while breathing his last.

CHAPTER 33

WEDDING CEREMONY

“Be happy.....”

I didn’t think he’d say such a thing.

It’s surprising.

There’s a bad aftertaste to it.

Was this something you were aiming for?

If that’s the case, this guy had a bad personality after all.

“It’s over brother.”

“Yeah.”

“What do we do now?”

“What do you want to do? I’m getting married.”

“Either way, we go wherever you go Almis.”

Said the three men grumbling.

“By the way, I’m the one who killed all the guards. I was the most active, wasn’t I?”

“What are you talking about?”

“You’re cunning, aren’t you!!”

The three start fighting with each other.

Really, how annoying.....

I’m the one who cut the king’s head off and broke his spear.

I Look back

We’re far from the battlefield.

I have to hurry back.

I charge again to the battlefield while holding my head high.

I see the state of my friends.

I was worried because I ended up rushing away from the battlefield.

Apparently, there seems to be no dead. We're really lucky.

There are a lot of people with just injuries.

They may die of tetanus if they don't treat it soon.

"Almis!"

Volos called out to me while running.

"It is indeed Almis! With this, I can finally rid myself of my regret towards Ragou!"

Volos said while crying.

I'll shut up and give you my handkerchief.

"Almis!"

This time it's Yal.

"Sorry, how did the battle go?"

"Look for yourself."

I show him Ferme's spear.

Val opened his eyes wide and then bowed.

"Ha! You guys killed King Ferme, this is a decisive win. Let's drink some wine next time! I'll hold on to that spear for now."

That said, Bartolo tore away the spear from me, pointing backward with his thumb.

Tetra was here.

"Almis..."

Tetra hugged me.

"Tetra..."

I gave Tetra a tight hug.

"Ha, don't be nervous."

I go around the room.

This is the third lap.

“My older brother, he is a leading figure.....”

Ron said with an amazed expression.

This is the former King Ferme’s palace.

I am preparing for my wedding ceremony now.

It will start in ten minutes.

“When this is over, will there be any rewards? King Rosaith and the other clans are coming. Be firm.”

Roswald said with a clever face.

Do I really need to meet with the clans?

I must be blessed.

“We’re ready. Come quickly.”

Urged on by Soyom, I went outside.

The sun is shining.

It is the perfect day for a wedding.

In front of me, all the clans including King Rosaith, are looking at me as if putting a price on me.

I bow to them and thank them for coming to my wedding ceremony.

My speech should be perfect because it’s the content Tetra and I came up with together.

When my speech ended, Tetra came out.

Tetra was wearing a wedding dress based on the color blue.

Half of her face is concealed with a thin veil.

It's a very expensive dress purchased from the Kirishian people.

"Beautiful."

Those words escaped my lips.

Tetra's face turned slightly red and she smiled.

Tetra turns to King Rosaith and the clans.

She thanked them for their help in the war.

I couldn't take my eyes off Tetra.

She is so beautiful I can watch her forever.

It doesn't matter if it is King Rosaith or all of the clans.

You can all leave.

.....I want to say it, but I won't.

Tetra bows.

Her speech was finally over.

Julia came up on the stage.

Magic also serves a purpose in wedding ceremonies.

That's what Julia said.

"Congratulations to the both of you."

Julia smiled.

"Thank you."

Tetra returned the smile.

As for me..... I couldn't say anything.

Julia makes an expression like she doesn't care.

"Do you both swear to love and help each other forever and ever?"

"I swear."

We answer together.

"The heavens, the sea, and the gods of the earth. The gods have been watching, helping and guiding us since the time when this world was a whirl of chaos. Bless these two in their marriage."

Julia cut her words short.

"The fairy's blessings on you both. Hopefully your love will last forever."

Julia looks at me, laughs and says.

"We have an agreement."

I know.

I was told many times.

I raise Tetra's veil.

There is Tetra's face, who stares at me with feverish eyes.

I press my lips against hers.

Loud applause follows.

After the ceremony, the banquet was held.

I was given congratulatory gifts from the clans and a lot of celebratory goods.

They gave me their best regards from now on.

Even a wedding is a place for politics.

There were no manners.

Ron and Roswald got drunk and fought, Lia got into some trouble, but it's not a big deal.

The only notable thing.....

After the banquet was over, Julia who was leaving, had tears in her eyes.

CHAPTER 34

The Kirisha Peninsula

It is one of the world's most developed regions, but it is a war-torn peninsula where many city-states vie for power with one another.

In a city-state at the eastern end of the Kirisha Peninsula, a stranger set foot there.

"So, this is the trade city that connects the Persis Empire with the Kirisha Peninsula..."

The man said as he looked up at the huge walls towering over him.

Claris has a population of 250,000 and it is the second most powerful city-state on the Kirisha Peninsula.

This city-state was originally a colony of another city-state on the Peninsula, and it is the only place connecting the Peninsula to the Persis Empire. Facing the Ash Sea in the north and the Inland Sea in the south, it has a natural harbor facing the Horn Bay, so naturally merchants gathered here. These powerful and influential merchants, who controlled the East-West trade, eventually rebelled against their colonial masters and gained independence.

This city-state has flourished as one of the wealthiest trade cities in the world.

"Hey! Older brother, go ahead!"

"Ah, excuse me."

The gatekeeper showed an amiable smile on his face.

"Hmm, is there a tax to enter....."

"No, it would interfere with trade here. Well, if you stay more than a month you will have to pay a tax to stay in the city, is this your first time here? I've never seen your face before..... where do you come from?"

"I'm from the Scarlet Empire. You know, the country known for its silk in the far east. My name is Yang Qing Ming."

"Oh, you're from the country of silk..."

The gatekeeper stared intently at Qing Ming.

"I see. Let me give you some advice. Keep in mind that there are two kinds of people in Claris. At the top, you have the first-class citizens. These are wealthy citizens who can pay the high head tax. The others are second-class citizens who are poor and unable to pay the tax. It would be wise for you to stay away from the second-class citizens. You may know this already, but the part of the city where the second-class citizens live is dangerous. By the way, I am a first-class citizen."

"This is..... your advice, thank you sir. I'll try to be careful."

Qing Ming gave a friendly laugh and passed through the gate.

"That's five copper coins."

"Uh... you don't accept coins from Persis?"

Qing Ming wasn't expecting to hear that and the shopkeeper frowned.

".....You have to exchange your money over there."

With the money changer that the shopkeeper pointed out, Qing Ming exchanged his Persis coins for Kirisha coins. There would be a fee for the exchange but there was nothing he could do about it.

"Here."

"Thank you, sir"

After exchanging his coins, Qing Ming decided to purchase a pastry, called Dolfitz, which was sold at the stall.

The pastry-shaped dough is fried with oil and skewered with a skewer.

It seems they use sugar, it's a good price.

Perhaps most of their business comes from first-class citizens.

Qing Ming eats the Dolfitz while thinking this.

He enjoys its simple sweetness, but it's too oily.

While Qing Ming runs through the city with a carefree attitude, a dirty man appears from out of the crowd.

He had a leather bag in his hands.

“Someone!! Capture him!! Thief!!”

Qing Ming kicked the man's feet out from under him and the thief fell to the ground.

Qing Ming grabbed the bag from the thief's hands.

“This must be a second-class citizen...”

Qing Ming took a good look at the thief.

This is a crime committed because of a troubled life. There is room for sympathy..... but a crime is a crime.

It's not something that can be allowed.

City guardsmen, who were nearby and heard the commotion, came over to arrest the second-class citizen.

“Please stop!! I promise I won't steal ever again!! I don't want to be a slave!!”

“Shut up! Do you want to be sent to the mines?”

The city guardsmen dragged the thief away until they were no longer in view.

“You there!! Thank you!!”

“Don’t worry about it.”

Qing Ming returns the bag to the black-haired woman who was chasing the thief.

Her skin was an olive complexion and she had a well-defined face.

There sure are a lot of beautiful women in the world, Qing Ming thought to himself.

The woman hugged the bag she received from Qing Ming to her chest.

“Is the bag that important?”

“Yes. My goal is to become an architect. This bag has all my sketches of the architecture I saw in Persis and all of my own designs too...”

Qing Ming is a bit surprised at her words.

One must be proficient in mathematics and physics in order to be an architect.

Not many women learn these skill.

Women are meant to watch over the home, they do not need to study, and there isn’t anyone who would hire them even if they did learn them anyway.

This is common sense in the Scarlet Empire where Qing Ming was born.

In the first place, there aren’t even many daughters of nobility in the east that learn to read or write. That’s why, even if she is a first-class citizen, it’s surprising to run into a girl in the middle of town who is aiming to become an architect.

“What? Do you find it strange for a woman to aim for a job like that? A woman can only be a witch, or has to wait for her husband at home?”

The woman in front of my eyes raised her eyebrows in disgust.

Qing Ming quickly shook his head.

“No, of course not, I was just a little surprised. Where I grew up, there were very few women who could read or write.”

“I see.”

The woman makes a face that seems a bit convinced.

“By any chance, can you read or write letters?”

“First of all, all first-class citizens have to be able to read and write letters at a minimum. That’s why all of Claris’s citizens, except for maybe the really young or old, can do it. Well, I don’t know about the second-class citizens.”

Qing Ming really admired that.

It truly is one of the largest commercial cities in the world.

“By the way, I would like to do something to thank you for your help.”

“Well then..... could you show me around? The city that is.”

The woman happily nodded at Qing Ming’s proposition.

“Right. My name is Ismene. And you are?”

“Qing Ming Yang. Yang is my surname, and my given name is Qing Ming.”

.....It’s not the correct way to say my name, but it is best to explain it as such to the people of Kirisha. Qing Ming thought while he spoke with Ismene. (1)

“By the way, how much do you know about Kirisha?”

“Let’s see..... there were two wars between Kirisha and the Persis Empire, and your specialties are olives and grapes. There are dozens of city-states on the Peninsula. That’s about it.”

“I see...”

After they finished walking around the city, they went to dinner at a restaurant. It was Qing Ming’s treat. Out of consideration for all Qing Ming had done for her, Ismene told him everything she knew about Kirisha.

"Well, all the city-states on the Kirisha Peninsula are in various alliances with each other and have signed non-aggression treaties among their allies. There is also an agreement between the different alliances. Every four years they hold a festival where all hostilities cease and even foreign enemies can participate in the festivities. Also, if the Persis Empire attacks, they all cooperate to fight against them."

"I see. I was wondering about how the city-states were able to defeat the Persis Empire twice even though they are so divided. So that's the reason."

Qing Ming wrote down what he learned on a notebook made of parchment.

He writes down everything that he sees and hears on his journey in his notebook.

"If I'm not mistaken, isn't Claris the leading power of the Eastern Alliance?"

"Yeah, that's right. There's also Alto of the Southern Alliance and Telbai of the Western Alliance. There's also Layme of the Northern Alliance too."

"Aha, this is very informative."

Qing Ming enters all the information into his notebook.

"Alto is a Democracy with a popular assembly made up of all adult men, Telbai is ruled by a senate consisting of a privileged aristocracy, Layme is ruled by a king and the nobility, and Claris is ruled by powerful merchants. Relations are bad between them because of the different political systems."

"But when you fight the Persis Empire, there is peace. That's interesting."

Qing Ming doesn't stop moving the pen in his left hand while he eats with his right. This is very bad manners.

"Can you tell me if this is right?"

"What?"

"Ismene is a first-class citizen, right? Doesn't that make you an aristocrat? At least that is how I understand it.....

Ismene laughs at Qing Ming's question.

"Good question. First-class citizens are different from aristocrats. We're just commoners. There are no aristocrats in Claris, we are all equal. There aren't any in Alto either, but there are aristocrats in Telbai and Layme."

"Really... the world is bigger than I thought."

Qing Ming's pen moves frantically and Ismene grabs it annoyed.

"Stop it, you're eating."

"Haha, I'm sorry."

Qing Ming puts his notebook in his pocket and gives a shy laugh.

"By the way, why are you traveling?"

Ismene listens casually as Qing Ming's eyes shine as he speaks.

"The farthest sea... to see all the oceans to the ends of the Earth! I was born on the eastern edge of this continent. When I was five years old, I went on a journey with my parents to see the end of the world..... but my parents died while on the journey. At that time, they told me to continue my journey to find the end of the world."

"Is that your dream?"

"No, my dream is different."

Ismene leaned over with interest.

"I am going to write about everything I see and hear on my journey. Then I will share what I know with the world."

"When you say it like that, I really can't hate it."

Ismene smiles.

"It's a good dream, and I believe it will come true soon. The day after tomorrow, there is a ship leaving Claris and heading towards Lezat city on the Adernia Peninsula. It's a short distance from there to the Western Sea."

“Is that true! Then my long journey is finally over.....”

Qing Ming couldn't help but look at the ceiling. His expectations on finally seeing the West Sea rose.

“Do you think that I could go with you?”

“Huh? I don't mind... but don't you have things you need to do here?”

“There are too many good architects in Kirisha. It's too difficult to find a job as a woman here. The Adernia Peninsula is different, it's an underdeveloped region. Those countries would be dying to get their hands on an excellent architect.”

“I see...”

The Kirisha Peninsula is a good place to hone your skills, but there is a lot of competition. It's just not a place where it's easy to make a name for yourself.

In that respect, an underdeveloped region would have more opportunities for employment.

“I understand, then let's go together!”

“It's decided then!”

The two of them shook their hands in agreement.



The next day...

“ugugugugugu...”

“Are you alright Qing Ming?”

She asks while Qing Ming groans over the toilet.

He can't afford to answer.

“Sorry. Kirishan cuisine uses a lot of oil..... I forgot to mention that people who aren't

used to eating it have a high chance of stomach problems. Forgive me, okay?"

CHAPTER 35

Not far from the southern tip of the Adernia Peninsula is the island of Trishkia.

Even further south from Trishkia island is a country named Povenia.

The nation of Povenia is a republic where a senate, consisting of the aristocracy, are responsible for national affairs.

In the maritime nation of Povenia, there is a huge economic disparity between the nobility and the commoners. The nobility are able to acquire vast wealth through maritime trade while the commoners must rely on agriculture and livestock. Because of this, there is a clear divide that distinguishes between the classes.

A perfect example of this would be the fact that commoners are not permitted to participate in government.

Only the aristocracy are allowed to become members of the Senate and commoners are forbidden membership and the right to vote.

There is also a significant gap between commoners and aristocrats in regards to the ownership of land and slaves.

Also, aristocrats and commoners are not legally allowed to marry.

This matter is so important that it needs to be said twice.

Aristocrats and commoners are forbidden to marry.

Alexis Barqah is one such noble in Povenia.

Alexis was born into a distinguished aristocratic family known for their military exploits and he himself served in the military.

He was only twelve years old when he fought in his first military campaign.

Since then, he has accomplished many meritorious deeds and was even placed in command of his own force by the age of fifteen.

After receiving the command of his own force, he participated in numerous naval and land battles. He was even victorious against rebel uprisings and at the age of 23, he is one of the most decorated generals of Povenia.

Anyone who saw him for the first time would pay especial attention to his right eye.

His right eye was covered with an eye patch and he had worn this eye patch for as long as anyone could remember.

He was known as the 'One-eyed Knight'.

His appearance was that of a brilliant and handsome man, with great military prowess and a promising future, even despite his eye.

There is not a single woman who would ever leave such a man. Many a daughter of the aristocracy had their eyes on him and hoped to catch him for a husband.

However, he refused all such proposals.

He had no intention of participating in any arranged marriages or settling down.

Many had asked him the reasons why he hadn't married yet.

He simply replied, "I am not interested in women. I like young handsome boys."

Among the sorcerers of Povenia, there is a woman named Melia.

She doesn't have a surname. This is because she is a commoner. She has only three friends.

The first is a wolf dog which is a crossbreed between a dog and a wolf. Her second friend is small owl around fifty celica (fifty centimeters). Her last and final friend, is a large hawk with a total length of one hundred and twenty celica (120 centimeters).

Her hawk has no rivals in aerial combat and has excellent sight.

Although she is only 22 years old, her contributions to the Povenian military are considerable, and she is known as the 'Hawk Bearer'. (1)

She is swarmed by marriage proposals practically every day of the week.

It's only natural. They could only see great future prospects in marrying a sorceress and there isn't a man alive who would leave one to remain single. Even more so if that sorceress were to be known as a beautiful woman.

It is also said that magic ability is genetically inherited in the child of a sorcerer.

Thus, she is extremely popular.

Despite the endless marriage proposals, all of them were refused.

She is considered a treasure among the common folk, and she even declined marriage proposals from those houses who were affiliated with aristocrats.

Someone once asked her, "why do you refuse to get married?"

"I'm not interested in men. I only like animals."

Late at night.

In the night sky, the crescent moon which is a symbol of Povenia, shines brightly.

While most Povenians were asleep peacefully in their beds, two figures move stealthily in the night. These two are Alexis and Melia.

"I've been wanting to see you my dear Melia!"

"And I've been wanting to see you as well, Alexis!"

They desperately embrace each other and share a passionate kiss. A crescent moon illuminates the surroundings of the two brightly.

After embracing for several minutes, the two finally get down to business.

"Tomorrow morning a ship to Trishkia will be at the harbor. When we arrive on Trishkia island, we will walk to the colonial city of Trishkia and then from there we will immigrate by ship to the Adernia Peninsula. Do you understand?" (2)

"Yes, I understand. This is the exact reason why I have endured being called a perverted animal lover."

"I know all too well, I've endured being known as a homosexual."

They both laugh together.

It was during the war that the two met. Melia was dispatched to Alexis's unit, as a sorcerer under his direct command.

They were immediately attracted to one another and their relationship soon blossomed into love...

However, one of them was an aristocrat, and the other a commoner.

Marriage was not a possibility for them.

Alexis really wanted to marry, but having a concubine on the side would not be allowed in a marriage. In Povenia, bigamy was forbidden by law.

But, it's a fundamental principle that aristocrats can't marry a commoner, so even if a concubine would be allowed, they would never be able to marry. (3)

If their relationship was ever discovered, they would be forever separated. Therefore, the two of them lied about their circumstances.

But lately, it was becoming more difficult to keep up the facade. Because of this, the two planned to elope and escape to another country.

They had to find a place to elope to first, staying in Povenia was out of the question.

Povenia's overseas colonies were considered as possibilities for their elopement, but

because of how well the two of them were known, they would be too conspicuous and so they were removed from consideration.

Another candidate was the Persis Empire.

They are a powerful country in the east that even once destroyed a former suzerain state of Povenia.

You would think that Povenia might have a hostile relationship with them, but they don't.

The reasons there is no hostile relationship is that the Persis Empire protects Povenia's overseas trade and because of this, both countries have established good relations with each other.

There are many ships that travel to the Persis Empire from here, so it would be easy for them to escape by ship to the Persis Empire. However, it is just too far. Courage is indeed necessary when defecting to a place where the language and culture differ significantly.

There is however a third option, the Kirishia Peninsula. Povenia has terrible relations with the countries on the Kirishia Peninsula. It is because they are competitors and fight over control of maritime trade.

The problem with this is that Alexis has fought against the armies of Kirishia. So he thought it might be dangerous to escape to one of the nations of Kirishia.

Therefore, they decided that they would defect to one of Kirishia's colonial cities on the Adernia Peninsula. Since the Adernia Peninsula was such a backwater place, no one would know their names.

These were their thoughts.

"Is this really okay? I don't like my family that much, but... you have a good family don't you?"

"What are you talking about... I'm supposed to be into bestiality remember? Who other than you would want to marry me?"

“Haha, that’s right.”

“You are the only one who would marry a homosexual like me.”

They had made up their minds and prepared themselves mentally.

The next day, news had spread throughout Povenia, that a male aristocrat and a female commoner, had run away together.

A large search was conducted by the Povenian military and word was spread throughout the cities of Povenia, but they were never found.

CHAPTER 36

Natural philosophy.

Natural philosophy is, in short, the idea of trying to elucidate naturally occurring phenomena theoretically.

Kirishia..... Especially in the Alto city-state, a system of slavery has been developed.

All of the work in Alto is done by the slaves so the citizens enjoy a life of leisure.

In this environment, they devised ways of passing the time.

In other words, why is fire hot? Why does water become ice when it cools? Why do the sun and moon rise and set regularly.....

They saw it necessary to cut to the truth of these phenomenon, that they had spoken of as being determined by God, and unravel them.

Therefore discussion was necessary, something which they found to be quite enjoyable.

Thus from this, Natural philosophy was developed.

Nikolaos is one of these natural philosophers of Alto. (1)

He was married at the age of seventeen, and his first daughter was born when he was eighteen.

Currently Nikolaos is thirty-eight years old. He has two daughters at the ages of twenty and twelve, and he has two sons who are fifteen and ten.

He owns ten slaves and his area of expertise is astronomy.

Astronomy is a means of understanding the laws of movement of the sun, moon and stars. Its purpose is to grasp the identity of the universe and to discern fate.

In current day Kirishia, the Earth is understood to be a planet in the shape of a sphere and both the Sun and Moon revolve around it.

At first, Nikolaos also supported this theory. However, while continuing his own research over a period of time he began to realize something.

This is strange? The calculation doesn't fit the theory? What this must mean is that the calculations just don't fit a geocentric model. It must be a false theory. (2)

Or it's much more complicated than that. As he thought more about it, he began to realize that the geocentric theory may be wrong. This led to Nikolaos formulating his own theory about it.

Namely, his theory was that the center of the universe is the sun and all of the celestial bodies, not excluding the Earth, revolve around the sun. Only the moon actually revolved around the Earth.

He named this theory the heliocentric model and announced it to the philosophical world.

His theory was poorly received and many reactions were cold. He was treated as a madman by those who believed that Humans were a race chosen by God, and that the celestial body that they inhabited was the center of the universe.

It was a total loss.

If those were the only arguments that he faced, it would have been possible to sufficiently refute them.

“You say that you are God’s chosen race and that man is at the center, but try to think of it like this. It shouldn’t be that strange of an idea to think of the Sun as the center of the universe, which is a symbol of the kindness within our heart.” (3)

However, he was refuted by the supporters of the geocentric theory.

Why you might ask, it's because his theory had a fatal weakness.

If the sun is at the center of the universe, then an annual parallax should be observed. Unfortunately, there was no actual annual parallax which could be observed.

On simple observation alone, the geocentric theory proved to be superior to the heliocentric theory.

Nikolaos insisted that the reason the annual parallax could not be confirmed was because the distance between the Sun and the Earth was too large, but no one listened.

He should have buried the hatchet there. Science doesn't develop without those who doubt and question and Alto's natural philosophers understood this well.

However, he was insistent and would not give up. Naturally, this type of behavior was not well received.

“That guy, isn’t he annoying?”

This slander towards him would spread to his family before long.

“Dammit!! Why doesn’t anyone understand!! My theory is perfect. Damn, these fools with their fixed ideas all have rocks for brains!”

Nikolaos rumpled up the papers he had used for his calculations and threw them away. He slammed his right arm on the desk. However he knew all to well that hitting a desk wasn’t going to convince Alto’s natural philosophers.

“Nikolaos, sir. There is a letter for you.”

“Hmm?”

Nikolaos received a letter from a slave. The letter was made from a mysterious material. It was thinner and lighter than parchment and it was white.

Dear elder brother, (4)

How are you? I am doing well. It seems that the choice I made in migrating to the Colonial City Lezat of Claris was the right one. What you have in your hand is a thing called 'paper' and it was obtained here in the Adernia Peninsula. My intelligent elder brother should understand well the usefulness of this. It seems that the barbarians of Adernia should not be taken lightly.

When I returned to Claris to replenish my stock, I heard rumors about you elder brother. Rumors of you are well known throughout Kirishia. I believe that your theory is in fact correct, but isn't it time you relented? I just can't endure my elder brother being treated as if he were a madman or a fool.

Isn't your family also suffering? Someday my brother's theory will be accepted.

It may be hundreds of years later, or even thousands of years, but... isn't that good enough?

The Adernia Peninsula is a good place that has a lot of potential. It's warm and the meals here are quite delicious. There is also an abundance of salt to be used.

Isn't it difficult for you to live on the Kirishia Peninsula? There isn't anyone who knows of you on the Adernia Peninsula. If my elder brother wishes to emigrate here then I will welcome it.

Well, until next time. I look forward to a favorable response.

Best regards.

Adernia Peninsula Lezat, Ainsworth company chairman Ainz

"Hmph."

Nikolaos rolls the letter up and throws it on the floor. He had no intention of giving up.

"Nikolaos, sir. The preparations for your meal are complete." Another slave informs him.

"I'm coming."

Nikolaos stood up from his seat and headed to his meal.

"What is Kroll doing?" (5)

"He's out as usual. He spends all his time in idle leisure, I will need to scold him when he returns." Nikolaos's wife laughed as she spoke.

The Nikolaos family continue to wait for their third son Kroll to return. After waiting for a while, the door opened and Kroll returned.

"I'm home....."

"What the hell... what on earth happened? You're wounded."

Kroll had a large bruise on his face. On closer inspection, his clothes were also dirty with soil.

"I just fell down is all. I will wash my hands now." Kroll said while attempting to escape.

Is it possible to get such a bruise from falling down? No, it's not. This was definitely caused by being beaten. *Why were you beaten up.....* Nikolaos considered silently.

He glances at his eldest daughter and realizes that she is still not married. She is getting older and is at that age where she should be. But whose fault is it that she has been unable to marry?

It's not just his eldest daughter. All of his children are being isolated from their community by his own actions. Nikolaos seriously weighed his purpose and his responsibility to his family.

And.....

"Hey, everyone. I have a proposition....."

TL Notes:

1. Nikolaos is a Greek form of Nicholas, Nicolas, Nicholaus, etc. There are many ways to write it. In this case, you can think of him as Nicolaus Copernicus. Although, the time period of this particular story is at a much earlier time period than Copernicus lived in our world. There are other philosophers/astronomers that also proposed heliocentric models, so he is a combination of them I suppose.
2. I have decided to use italics for when a character is talking to themselves in their head.
3. This sentence was difficult to translate, he is saying something like the sun is a symbol of goodness, kindness or the kindness in people's hearts. Maybe he is trying to appeal to their religious beliefs 善の象徴である太陽が中心であっても可笑しくないだろう」と
4. The author doesn't format the text like a letter but I decided to put it in the format of a letter since he is reading an actual letter here.
5. The name Kroll in Japanese is Kuroru, also sounds like Crawl, or Krawl, I went with Kroll.
6. I decided to make this Notes section use separate colors for easier identification, should I use two colors or keep it as one or each should be different? Also, what about the colors themselves? Just want to provide a better reading experience.

CHAPTER 37

Persis Empire Capital Jamshid

“Haa...”

Emperor Xerxes III of the Persis Empire was very troubled. He was greatly concerned about the state of affairs with Kirishia. Both his grandfather and father had undertaken expeditions in order to conquer Kirishia, but both had failed. Relations between Kirishia and Persis were extremely bad.

Truthfully, he didn't really wish to control Kirishia. Even if the land was offered, he would love it if he could politely refuse it.

In the first place, it was a land which wasn't all that rich. It was a dry land with little rain, which made it difficult to produce wheat. Though, if one were to speak of the cultivation of olives and grapes, then it was a perfect place for a thriving industry.

There really wasn't much sense in conquering such a place.

Then, why did the Emperors of the past mount expeditions to conquer Kirishia? It was because Kirishia interfered in the affairs of the Persis Empire.

There is an area of the Persis Empire where Kirishian people live. The Kirishian people who live there often revolt against the Empire. Out of all the city-states on the Kirishian Peninsula, it was mainly the City-State of Alto that supported these rebellions.

No matter how many times the revolts were crushed, Alto would continue to provide assistance and weapons to the rebels. These rebellions couldn't be fully stopped until their source of power was removed. Though it may seem as if it were prudent to let them have their independence, it would only lead to rebellions throughout the Empire from others who sought independence.

A variety of different ethnic groups lived throughout the Empire. War was not something the Emperor wanted. War ruined the economy and destroyed the land. It did much more harm than good. However, there was no other way. Whether it was done or not, there were severe consequences.

"How can I conquer Kirishia... while they constantly fight with each other, they always unite whenever we attack..."

Kirishia's total military power was about 50,000. Meanwhile, the Persis Empire could dispatch as many as 400,000 to Kirishia. The difference in military power was overwhelming. However, they couldn't win.

The reason was simple, morale was extremely low. In the first place, Persis was a diverse multi-ethnic nation with soldiers who were comprised of a variety of races. Their patriotism towards the Persis Empire wasn't exactly overflowing. Moreover, because of the many different languages, it was difficult to organize the soldiers effectively.

As for the Kirishians, they were defending their home and so their morale would be very high. Also, because they were constantly fighting among themselves, their fighting ability was high. So, the Persis Empire lost every time.

"Alto's heavy infantry (hoplites) are very powerful. I also can't make light of the mobility of the Germanis cavalry which Claris employs. The soldiers of Layme have unrivaled strength, then there's the strategists of Telbai and their homosexuals..... The Sacred Band of Telbai are a nuisance." (1)

Last but not least were their maritime forces. Kirishia had superior ship technology and seamanship compared to Persis. No matter how Persis prepared their ships, they would always lose to the Kirishians.

"Your majesty, we have completed our goal of the construction of 600 warships."

"Is that so... and these warships are made of Lebanon Cedar. I don't think these ships will be defeated that easily."

In a naval battle, the greatest advantage was in the proficiency of the sailors. How much of a difference could the number and quality of ships make?

"Your Majesty. I have a suggestion for dealing with Kirishia."

"What is it? You may speak."

The Prime Minister smiled from ear to ear as he made his proposal.

"In order to make bread, you need a baker. Aren't there those who are as good as the Kirishians in terms of naval ability? We can form an alliance with them."

"Povenia... it's not a bad idea. Then, what about on land?"

"Kirishia has a powerful army. They will fight to the bitter end. We will need men who are equally determined." Xerxes stared at the Prime Minister.

The Prime Minister opened his mouth.

"Let's ask those monsters of the desert. Even if we lose, their numbers will decrease. However, if we win, then we will obtain victory."

"Indeed... that's a good idea. Then, I will write a letter immediately."

[Humming]

West of Jamshid, the capital of the Persis Empire, is a vast desert.

It is a large desert spreading slightly south along the border between Kirishia and the Persis Empire.

There, one woman was humming a song. She had golden blond hair and a brown complexion. She held a spear so large that it was disproportionate with her hand. Black Dragon Damascus steel shined on the tip of this spear.

It would have been quite the strange scene if you were to only see her alone, holding such a large weapon. However, what was even stranger was the thing keeping her company. She was accompanied by a huge salamander. And while she hummed a song, the salamander screamed.

The Salamander's tail was cut while the woman dodged its flames, cutting its tail and one of its six legs, all while the salamander screamed in front of the eyes of the monstrous woman.

[Humming]

The woman hummed while she avoided the monster's flames by jumping towards the

bosom of the salamander and thrusting her spear into its jaw.

[■■■■■!!](2)

The salamander retreated while screaming and throwing up blood and the woman jumped up, thrusting her spear in its back.

[■■■■■■!!]

Her body was like a flame, dyed red with blood. She licked the blood on her lower lip and grinned.

“Oops!”

Because the salamander began to roll around on the ground, the woman was shaken off its back. However, the spear remained stuck in its back. Seeing this as an opportunity to strike, the salamander bared its fangs and attacked the woman.

“Ahh!”

She aimed a kick at the salamander’s nose as it charged. Her kick cracked some of the scales of the charging salamander.

“This is because of my training and these shoes made of Dragon Damascus.”

The salamander was blown away like a ball. Being in severe pain, the salamander could not get up.

The spear from its back was pulled out.

“Well, that’s goodbye~”

She thrust her spear through its heart.

“Chief!!”

“Huh? What is it?”

While she dismantled the Salamander, a man who was riding on a camel comes running towards her.

"Chief. There is a letter here from the Emperor."

"Thank you, and stop calling me Chief, call me Aisha." She said while winking at the man with a friendly smile.

"By the way, this salamander, you killed it alone?"

"Yup. I heard it was strong so I was looking forward to fighting it. It wasn't that big of a deal though."

"It looks like it could be a lower Demon Beast class, but... you are still as strong as ever."

The man looked at Aisha with eyes filled with respect and awe.

The people of the desert are a race of people that live in an area which extends southeast from the Kirishian Peninsula. One out of every one hundred of their people possess what is known as the 'Hunter's Protection', and they are a people with a high level of skill with iron technology. They travel throughout the desert on camels, do business while grazing, and plunder using their weapons with those who fail to negotiate well with them. They are blacksmiths, nomads, merchants and thieves. These are the people of the desert.

Because their people lived in oases throughout the desert, they were not unified as a people for a long time. Though all of the desert clans were technically subjects of the Persis Empire, in reality they were partially independent countries who constantly fought each other over the oases and trade routes.

It was said that each successive emperor of the Persis Empire often were troubled by them. However, eight years ago, the clans were united by force. It was the clan chief of the Habu that accomplished this feat.

Aisha of the Habu.

She had two blessings besides 'Hunter's Protection' which the people in the desert originally had. One of these blessings was [Divine Protection of the War God]. The other was [Divine Protection of the Mad God]. (3)

All three of them were protections that provided physical strength enhancements.

When her father died, she made her elder brother and younger brother yield to her through strength, and she became the clan chief. She then leveraged her connections with Xexes III, who had just ascended the throne, through a sexual relationship.

All the clans fell into their hands in the blink of an eye due to the overwhelming force and influence of the Persis Empire.

"Alright, so what do you want to ask from me?" Aisha broke the seal and read the signed letter.

She smiled from ear to ear.

"What is the emperor asking of us?"

"It looks like we will be joining the expedition to Kirishia this time."

The man frowned while listening.

"Hmm? What's wrong?"

"The Emperor is just using us as tools. Is that really okay?"

"Hahaha. Our relationship has always been one of give and take. We use each other."

Desert people are empowered to do business freely within the Persis Empire. As compensation, the Empire imposes a commercial tax on the people of the desert. Trade is indispensable for the people of the desert, and the commercial tax is an important income which supports the huge military expenses of the Empire. It might be said that at the least, Aisha and Xerxes III had an excellent relationship. However, most of the desert people had a strong sense of independence and so many of them disliked putting themselves below an emperor of a different ethnicity.

"You can loot as much as you like. Won't that mean huge profits? I've been thinking for a long time now that the Kirishians were annoying. I'm looking at this from a different perspective. They started to muscle in on our trade without permission. We will kill them and reduce their numbers."

Both the people of the desert and the Kirishians were commercial people. Originally, they mostly traded by sea while the desert people traded by land, but in recent years Claris had begun to partake in inland trade as well. Therefore, the people of the desert

didn't have a good relationship with the Kirishians currently.

"In addition....." Aisha gripped a part of the salamander, "I've been quiet lately. It's about time I went on a little rampage..... I must show them. We'll make them pay."

The salamander's horn was broken into pieces.

TL Notes:

1. This is a reference to the Sacred Band of Thebes which was an army that consisted of only homosexual men.
2. Not sure what these blocks are, maybe a strange language?
3. The names of these abilities might be wrong. 一つは『闘神の加護』。 もう一つは『狂闘の加護』。

CHAPTER 39

The country's policies were decided in a conference between the powerful clans in King Rosaith's country.

This was known as The Meeting of the Powerful Clans.

Incidentally, there were two types of clans. The first ones were large clans that belonged to feudal lords who ruled over a certain portion of the land. The others were smaller clans that were governed by the larger ones.

Basically, fellow feudal lords were considered equals.

The King ruled over the feudal lords, the feudal lords ruled over the landowners and the landowners ruled over the citizens.

Such is the political system under King Rosaith's rule, except for the portion of land that is directly under his control.

Since the area directly controlled by King Rosaith isn't much bigger than a feudal lord's, it is not possible to have a centralized political structure.

This is the reason why it is such a small country.

"Your Highness! Are you sure that we can leave the newly conquered territory to that unknown and suspicious person from the Ars Family?"

Regale Debelle, someone from the most influential clan in the Rosaith Kingdom, exclaims with a loud voice.

"Where is he suspicious? I have known the lad for a few years now. He is a good young man who gives us free honey every time he comes here."

Incidentally, this rumor is really going around.

People who went in the forest were killed and eaten by the terrible griffon. However, there seems to be a village within the forest which is considered to be a place for special beings. Thus, people concluded the the village chief was surely the griffon's

son. This is the situation.

Nowadays, rumors of him having a tail, fin and wings are quickly spreading.

There are actually two different versions to this story. The first version is that the lad is the child of a girl, who served as a sacrifice, and the griffon, either against the will of the girl or because they had fallen in love. The other version is that the girl was a virgin who got pregnant with the son of God. Her parents, however, cared a lot about societal appearance and abandoned her in the forest. In the end, she was found by the griffon.

The latter is more common.

There is this idea that a child cannot be born when the deed is done with a beast.

However, people can't go against the fact that a child can be born from God.

After all, there are rumors that the people from the surrounding forest and the former country of King Ferme are Almis Ars' only citizens.

"From our point of view, he is suspicious. There is a more suitable candidate than that boy."

"Hm! I don't know. Lord Bartolo's territory has increased. Who else is suitable? I don't know. Perhaps... are you saying that the land should be distributed to the soldiers who participated in the war? However, it seems those people are not educated. That Lord Almis seems to know how to write in the Kirishan language and he also seems to be good in math. I feel like I can leave it to him."

Almis is able to speak and write the Kirishan language in everyday scenarios as a result of Tetra's lessons.

There is nothing to say about his mathematics.

In this area, one is intelligent if he is able to do the basic arithmetic operations. Moreover, one receives a lot of job offers if he is also able to read and write Kirishan language in everyday conversations.

Even if the feudal lords here have received the highest education, only 20% of them know both Kirishan language and basic arithmetics, right?

Naturally, Regale is one of those who can't do both. After all, he comes from a powerful clan in the rural area.

Incidentally, Tetra mastered the Kirishan language at the age of 10.

That does exceed the limitations of a normal human being.

"Lord Almis, Lord Bartolo and Lord Volos participated in this battle. What is wrong with deciding for those who participated in the war?"

The clan members turned their heads upon hearing these words.

Everyone was afraid of King Ferme and none had sent out their armies to fight against him.

Originally, King Ferme had greatly lost the battle due to the use of gunpowder and a weapon that had never existed in this world.

Rather, it would be better to say that they had fought well.

"But he has to make preparations for King Domorgal's invasion. Even that person will..."

"So you are telling us that you believe more in this boy than those who were scared and captured by King Ferme?"

King Rosaith glared at Regale after hearing these words.

With the King's gaze fixed on him, Regale winced unintentionally.

"Any other objections?"

No one answers.

"Well then, this concludes the meeting."

Thus, the Meeting of the Powerful Clans ends.

"Damn that worthless bastard!"

"Now, please calm down, Master Regale. The King has more or less two years left, then the throne will be yours."

Regale's confidant, Belmet, spoke.

He is sixty years old.

He does not have a grandchild or, rather, he is not married.

He exists solely to serve the Debell family.

Therefore, he was appointed as Regale's confidant.

Basically, the vassals that gathered around Regale were mostly all his relatives, but there were others whom had been gathered under Belmet's recommendations.

Simply put, he exists as Regale's "pearl of wisdom."

"Well, I will choose Princess Julia's fiance."

"Master Regale, please don't be careless."

Belmet advised Regale.

"Whose side are you on?"

Regale asked his confidant with a stunned expression.

"Master, you are the most powerful among the clans. You are clearly the next in line for the throne. Not even the sickly king can stop you, no matter how much he dislikes you. However, if the said boy is able to get the support of the clan members..."

"Heh! That boy is just lucky that he won the battle. Even I could have done it. Winning a battle like that is clearly possible. That brat doesn't even have a decent support. Worst case is that it's better to overthrow the kingdom."

Regale proudly said that.

"This should be the last resort. You have this habit of negligence. Please be extremely careful. Supposing that you will become the king..."

Belmet started to scold him.

While ignoring the middle aged confidant's scolding, Regale left King Rosaith's palace.

"I am the man chosen by the faeries! It is I who will become King!"

Regale muttered to himself.

...

"My Lord Father! My fiance will be Regale Debell, right? I really don't like that guy."

"I agree. However, in the present circumstance, there is no one else."

Regale Debell is the lord of the most powerful clan in the country.

There is even some royal blood flowing in Regale's veins and he has many followers and supporters.

There will be a civil war if anyone other than him becomes king.

If a civil war happens, the surrounding countries will intervene.

It is not certain that you could win and, even if you did win, you would lose a lot of territory.

"So, I have to marry him after all..."

Julia said sadly, looking downcast.

Her chest was filled with disgust and sadness since she was unable to be with the man she favored. She felt envy towards her friend who could be with him, and the hated child who would be born from their relationship.

"To tell the truth, when I was ten years old, this country was destroyed by King Ferme. I escaped into the forest and met Almis. I got married, and dreamed of regaining my country. It was a fun dream. It would have been better if Ferme was king, that is my wish now."

"In that case... wouldn't I be dead?"

"No, father would be in prison. You would be healthy and not sick. I will help you.! I am not going to accept your marriage! That's what you would shout."

Julia felt happy, but also sad due to her delusion.

By the way, Regale would be the first to die. Killed by King Ferme.

She understands all too well that it is just a fantasy.

"The wedding... Tetra, you were beautiful. I also, just like that... I want to have a husband like that. I am going to train Regale to be just like Almis somehow. Hey, why should I have to pretend and train him?"

Julia breathes a deep sigh.

Her pupils a little moist.

Tears will come out if you don't move your mouth anyhow.

"Be patient. I have a plan. Why do you think I gave all of King Ferme's former territory to Almis?"

When King Rosaith said that, Julia jumped.

She pushed down on King Rosaith.

"Dad!! Does that mean I could possibly marry Almis?"

"Hey, heavy!! It's painful, geho, geho"

King Rosaith coughed intensely.

In a panic, Julia quickly rose from off of King Rosaith.

"This stupid girl... I just lost three months off my life."

"I'm so sorry!"

Julia apologizes while rubbing her father's back.

"Well, that's the story. It is impossible at the present. The reward for killing King Ferme was offset by gaining his territory. Another big thing... he needs to achieve something else to show his ability. And he doesn't have any allies yet."

The Kingdom of Rosaith.

There is a reason for this 'of'.

This 'of' is what separates King Rosaith and the country.

In other words, there is no 'We are the nation'.

King Rosaith's country consists of an alliance of powerful clans.

In other words, the kingdom was established by a few large and powerful clans under the leadership of the Rosaith family.

Therefore, the relationship between King Rosaith and the powerful clans is relatively close to equals, even though a master-servant relationship exists between them.

Especially if it is a large powerful clan with a population of more than ten thousand people.

The powerful clans have tax collection rights from the very beginning and this is not something given to them.

King Rosaith can't subjugate a powerful clan forcibly, nor are the powerful clans obligated to obey the king.

Therefore, the support of other powerful clans is indispensable when it comes to succession rights of the throne.

Even if Almis were to inherit the throne, there would only be the Ars territory of 30,000 and the Rosaith territory of seventy thousand.

The remainder of the clans would all become enemies.

Conversely, if their support could be obtained...

"In other words, it is up to him. It's unlikely, but there is hope. I'll try to do something about it, so please don't cry."

King Rosaith consoled his daughter.

CHAPTER 40

MANAGING TERRITORY

“Yal, is it really fine for you to not stay like them?”

“Yes, I have decided to devote my life to you, after all.” Yal said with a grin.

All the former Ferrum Territory has become part of the Ars Territory. That includes, of course, the territory of my original village.

After all, it would be a waste to abandon or to neglect the village we’ve spent years to reclaim and develop. Having said that, managing all these lands by myself would be out of the question.

Thus, I asked each of the villagers whether they would like to stay in the village or come with me.

A large part, particularly from those who I saved as children and those who were slaves, who I have now freed by the way, have decided to come with me. I will grant them territory.

Most of the refugees who came last year, on the other hand, elected to stay in the village even though I thought they would want to come back to their hometowns. They probably felt it would be more comfortable to live their lives in the new village.

However, it’s a village where one hundred and thirty people lived. Having only thirty people living there would be a waste so I plan to add more people from my new territory there.



(Scene change)

“Alright, all members are accounted for huh.”

We have Tetra, Soyon, Lulu, Ron, Roswald, Gram, and Yal. Bolus and Bartolo has also joined.

"Hey, I think I feel like I'm the only one sticking out like a sore thumb." (Bartolo)

"Well, I heard Bartolo-san holds some territory so I figured to consult your opinions on managing territory." (Almis)

It's my first time managing territory. I really don't know anything about it.

That's why asking a senpai is only natural.

"So... first, please teach us what feudal lords do." (Almis)

"It's not a big deal, really. Basically, you're responsible for maintaining public order, sorcery defense, territorial defense, and giving tribute to King Rosyth. You're also responsible for passing judgement and justice. Also managing necessary expenses and tax collection. That's pretty much it." (Bartolo)

Hey, isn't that a big deal?

"Well, although it might not be a walk in the park, it's not that difficult as you're imagining. First, of course, is the tribute to King Rosyth, but you've been given exemption for two years due to these special circumstances." (Bartolo)

Ah, right. Something like focusing on recovery and reconstruction or what not.

"As for tax collection, you let each of the village heads and the landlords collect them for you. You only have to set the tax rate. Well, the old landlords in your territory were all executed so there's another problem for you." (Bartolo)

The landlords supported and cooperated with King Ferrum. There's no way an excuse like "We were deceived by King Ferrum!" would float. So, all of them got executed while their relatives fell into slavery. You might call them pitiful but it's just them reaping what they sowed.

"Sorcery defense should be left to sorcerers. Especially since you have a few particularly skilled sorcerers in your team. However, it is very important that you take care, retain, and conserve those who can ride souls." (Bartolo)

This means I can't let Tetra, Soyom, and Lulu participate in the construction of magical barriers. It might be fine if the scope of the barrier were small but covering the whole of my territory would be impossible. (Re-check)

Moreover, there's also that country somewhere who was known for the behind the scene sorcery attacks ten years ago.

"Speaking of which, regarding, the junior sorcerers employed by King Ferrum, they're in jail but I can free them and use them as per my discretion right?" (Almis)

"Well, yes, since administering justice is one of your jobs. I think that's the reason King Rosyth left them there in the first place."

I see. That's King Rosyth for you. Splendid.

"As for maintaining public order and territorial defense, we will be helping you for the meantime." (Bartolo)

"Would that be alright?" (Almis)

"It's an order direct from King Rosyth. The king is not stupid enough to completely leave behind the defense of a territory bordering King Domorugal's domains to someone who doesn't have territorial management experience except that of a small village." (Bartolo)

Ah, right. We border King Domorugal's territory.

"But don't worry much. It would be fine, really. King Domorugal is busy fighting a war with King Girubetto and King Fardam after all. He won't have the leeway to look south." (Bartolo)

Is it really alright?

You'd get attacked if you get careless you know.

"Please tell me more about my judicial duties. What laws do I have to base my judgements on?" (Almis)

"Basically, it depends upon your discretion. Well, murders and virgin rape typically warrant the death penalty of course. Robbery and general rape warrant the amputation of the right arm. Petty theft warrants caning or whipping. That's pretty much how conventional judicial wisdom goes." (Bartolo)

In short, it's customary/common law huh.

In the first place, without a proper/dominant system of writing, there's probably no use writing down the laws.

"Then let's just leave the judgements to the village chiefs' opinions and discretion." (Almis)

I can now somewhat understand the things I need to do.

With this I can somewhat get by.

"For the meantime, I think we should start a population census." (Almis)

"What do we do specifically?" (Someone)

"We record in writing the sex, age, and occupation/industry of all the people within our territory." (Almis)

There's not a lot of people who has a good command of the Cretian language. Inevitably, because of this, there won't be something like family registers and such. Therefore, the village chief, which is the person who knows the village the most, becomes in charge of the tax collection and governance in behalf of his lord. It's become a system like that. But this becomes the stage for tax evasion, corruption, and acting as one pleases. Surely lots of taxes are wasted and unaccounted for because of this.

I would like to address this one way or another.

"But the people who can freely write in Cretian, including Leader and Tetra, aren't even more than ten people. I don't think this would work."

"Don't worry about that. We'll make the forms beforehand. You'll only have to write the numbers in them." (Almis)

That way, tallying the results would also be much easier.

"The forms would be handwritten? That would be too bothersome I think."

"I've also thought about that. I think I have a solution and it shouldn't be too hard." (Almis)

We would be able to prepare them in large quantities by printing them, that is by Woodblock Printing.

"You've thought of a great idea huh. Can we also do it in my territory?" (Bartolo)

"There no particular problem with that. It would cost you though. Don't forget the cost of the paper too." (Almis)

"My territory probably has around 6000 to 7000 people though. How much paper would that take?" (Bartolo)

"Let's see... A sheet could have twenty people's data recorded in them so you would probably need three hundred to three hundred fifty sheets of paper. A sheet of paper would cost around 10 bronze coins so that would be around 3500 bronze coins." (Almis)

Bartolo held his head with his two hands as he heard my answer.

"You calculate fast huh. 3500 bronze coins huh? How much would that be if I paid with wheat? I've never used bronze coins so I don't know." (Bartolo)

"I don't have experience buying wheat with bronze coins so I don't know but if with salt against bronze coins, that would be around 21000 didals (350 kilos)." (Almis)

Bartolo grimaced as I said so.

"That's pretty expensive huh. Make it cheaper, come on." (Bartolo)

"Well, it's pretty hard on us too you know. But since we're fellows after all I'll cut down the price by twenty percent." (Almis)

For now, it's become that we'll trade paper with wheat. With this we'll be able to secure our food provisions.

"Then the next order of business would be the tax rate. The Ars territory fell into ruin because of King Ferrum's reign therefore I think we should lower the tax rate." (Almis)

At the same time, this is also a bid for popularity with the people. I'm a newcomer after all.

"However, if we lower the tax rate too much we won't have income. Moderation is needed. So, what would be the prevailing reasonable tax rate?" (Probably Almis)

"Let's see. There's lot of patterns that influence the tax rate after all. If it's payment in kind (PIK), sixty percent would be expected. However, they can also pay thirty percent of that in the form of labor." (Bartolo)

According to Bartolo, in PIK, they could pay in wheat, cloth, or a specialty product like when blacksmiths pay with swords and spears.

"Then let's go with a PIK only system. The tax rate would be... maybe 40%. Preferably with wheat." (Almis)

"The reasoning is....?" Tetra asked.

"There is a need for desolated farmlands to recover. Therefore, there is no leeway to round people up for labor. The only thing we can do is to let them pursue agriculture. King Ferrum considerably strengthened the defenses on the border with King De Morgal so there won't be any plans for some special kind of construction." (Almis)

"Then how about the manufacture of paper and the repair and construction of defense facilities burned in the recent war?" (Tetra)

"We will go with employing people. We will pay grain as a salary." (Almis)

There's probably a lot of people who can participate with that kind of special income. Especially widows who lost husbands and sons in the war. We can let them manufacture paper. You don't use energy to the extent of farming in paper making after all. Instead of the somewhat difficult farming, papermaking, with a reliable income, would probably be more convenient for the women.

Besides, I plan to introduce the thousand-tooth thresher. If the widows became paper manufacturers, then the effects of introducing the thresher would be lessened.

"Alright, then that seems to be it for domestic affairs. Of the greatest importance is the Crop Rotation System. This needs to be widely introduced to our territory." (Almis)

Well, for the meantime this will do for the crop rotation system. It's not something you can easily change or implement after all.

"Then how should we gather the taxes?" (Almis)

"The village chief will collect them from the villagers then we will collect from the village chiefs. Should they work illegally or embezzle tax proceeds, then they would be taken care of as per the feudal lords' jurisdictions." (Tetra)

"That's a great idea huh." (Almis)

We need to dispatch bureaucrat-cum-soldiers to every village. That is exactly the opinion I wanted to impart. With that system, the village chiefs would direct the villagers. Meanwhile, the taxes would be collected by the bureaucrat-cum-soldiers. I can trust them after all if they were my comrades. They most probably can't be bought/bribed as well. With this we can also centralize power. Hitting two birds with one stone. That's my Tetra. She's a genius ain't she.

Next would be the martial affairs.

"What do we... What should we do about soldiers?" (Ron)

Ron... It's fine if you don't use polite speech you're not used too, you know. Actually, it's kind of lonely that you're using polite speech.

"Uh... No... Well, Leader has become the patriarch of a powerful clan you see. So, I figured distinction should become important. I can't stand it when people make light of our leader because we don't speak polite speech." (Ron)

"...You've thought about that much..." (Almis)

People grow huh.

I'm a little touched.

Well, there's some truth in what Ron said. But it's not like our relationships would suddenly change because of using polite speech.

"Then the answer to the previous question is?"

"Ah, Sorry. I was moved a little. Hmm. Soldiers, huh. For the meantime, we should confirm the number of soldiers we have."

First is everyone from the village – 30 people. Everyone is equipped with iron forged weapons. Skill and morale is extraordinarily high. Next are the “We love Tetra” troops (Tetra Daisuki Tai) commanded by Bolus, 40 people all with bronze equipment.

These are my present forces, 70 people in total.

We can add Bartolo’s forces which would be a hundred. Around ten possess iron equipment while the rest have bronze equipment. Morale and skill are unknown. The only thing I know is that Bartolo’s forces faced King Ferrum’s army head on so you can probably count on their skills.

They will fight with us for the meantime.

We also have forces loaned to us by King Rosyth, one hundred soldiers all bronze equipped. Although you can’t say their skills and morale are high, you can’t say they’re low either. The King would be paying for their expenses.

This means that should King De Morgal attack us we would immediately be able to face them with 270 soldiers. How would we fare with this?

“How much is King De Morgal’s total martial power?” (Almis)

“Around 10,000 men strong. He brings out that much when he slugs it out with King Gillbed and King Fardam. Should all the powerful clans in the kingdom under King Rosyth unite, we should be fielding around 5,000 soldiers. However, in reality, we would only be fielding around 3,000. But be at ease. King De Morgal is always at war with King Gillbed and King Fardam. Therefore, 10,000 men marching against us would be highly unlikely. It would be 3,000 at most.” (Bartolo)

I see. That means we should have enough to face them evenly. If we could stall them for time...

3,000 against 270... that’s somewhat...

“At the very least, I want 500 soldiers. Meaning we would need 230 new soldiers.” (Almis)

“Would we turn to conscription as expected?” (Tetra)

I answer Tetra’s question.

"Hmmm. I don't like conscription you see." (Almis)

Conscripts have bad efficiency. You would have to pull people who don't want to go to war forcibly somewhere plus you'd have to give them equipment. Plus it's because of forcefully siphoning the labor force to the army that tax yields go down.

They would only be useful after training them for a long time but by then their term of service would have ended. They would then come back to neglected desolated fields and the vicious cycle begins again.

You would give them guns, and by pulling the trigger, let them kill people. Furthermore, the concept of self-determination would have to permeate society and every citizen would have to be seriously thinking about national defense. It may be possible in the modern era, but doing it at this civilization level is a long shot.

You would need strict training in the hoplite corps after all. The people of the Ars Clan Territory would find any leader good so long as the taxes go down anyway.

Therefore, conscription is out of the question.

In times of crises it might be fine, but peaceful times wouldn't need that much soldiers anyway.

"Conscripts would have too much of a difference in skill and morale with us. In the worst case, they might just become dead weight. Our role is containment, right? Therefore, I believe what we need would be quality as opposed to quantity." (Almis)

"Hmm. For an amateur, you sure do know your stuff huh." (Bartolo)

I got praised by Bartolo.

What, I'm not happy at all even if I'm praised by this guy you know!

"Alright, it's decided! It would cost us cash but let's recruit regulars." (Almis)

"Umm. Older brother, should we announce the recruitment when we collect the taxes?"

"Ah, let's go with that." (Almis)

Posting the announcement or erecting a sign would probably be useless. There probably isn't anyone who would be able to read them anyway.

"Nee. Almis-san. Aren't you forgetting something important?" (Gram)

"Something important?" (Almis)

"It's archers. ARCHERS. When you speak of defensive battles, you gotta have archers, right?" (Gram)

Gram expressed with great emphasis.

Well, it's not like I forgot about archers but...

"Archers are expensive, you see. You would need advanced skills. We will be increasing them but..." (Almis)

In the Aldnea Peninsula, Hoplites would be the deciding factor in battle.

"Cavalry! Cavalry... Cavalry would be necessary, right older brother?"

"Horses are expensive too you know? Besides, cow and horse tilling would be the priority anyway." (Almis)

We won't be able to gather much anyway. What can ten cavalrymen do as a cavalry division? At the very least we need a hundred to function properly so why bother. My Japanese sense tells me that it'll then become "Let's gather a hundred light vehicles!" or something like that.

"Next, we would need to mass produce black powder."

It can't be made easily after all. A lot of things will happen so making it can't be helped.

"That powder is amazing huh. Teach me how to make it too." (Bartolo)

"It would be a problem if the technique to make it gets leaked so that's the only thing I can't tell you. Besides, it's not something you can prepare in large quantities plus the efficacy varies." (Re-do, too complicated)

It was a good thing the enemy was in close formation when we used it in the defensive

battle. Otherwise, the gunpowder stocks wouldn't have been enough. It was a surprise rear attack, on the other hand, when we used it to defeat King Ferrum therefore ensuring success.

It's particularly effective when used against an enemy for the first time. But after that, the enemy would probably prepare countermeasures. Relying on gunpowder too much would be bad.

You need large quantities of the ingredients to make gunpowder. You can get countless amount of sulfur from volcanoes, you can also produce large quantities of charcoal, and create a reliable method of producing large quantities of saltpeter.

However, you can't easily make that much spears with ignition magic attached. For that, you need a substance called magic stones of good quality to manufacture. A magic stone refers to stones suitable for sorcery among charm stones. It was named by Tetra.

These stones may be cheap but there aren't a lot of them either. People think they're trash so nobody mines them.

Therefore, collecting them in large quantities would take special expenses which for some reason could go high. It's a troublesome thing that could cost something much more than what the magic stone could be worth. (Re-do, too complex.)

If it can't explode, then the gunpowder would be useless. On the other hand, if we use ignition cords then it you would have to consider the large possibility of it not exploding, making it very unreliable.

"Is that so? Fine. When the day that you could mass produce it comes, then please by all means, teach the method to me." Bartolo readily withdrew.

"In exchange, please teach me how to manufacture paper." (Bartolo)

"That I would be teaching King Rosyth so please be at ease." (Almis)

As expected, it has become difficult to keep secrets when you become a subordinate.

"Next would be sorcery, yes? We need to set-up barriers."

The reason I and everyone almost died from starvation and the reason Tetra's parents died was the famine caused by a curse.

I understand that we should invest forces on the matter if you think about it clearly.

"I heard a huge country from the north applied the curse." (Almis)

"Yeah. It's the Rozel Kingdom, right? It's the country that dominates the whole northern part of the Adernia Peninsula."

King Rozel huh? Alright, I'll remember the name.

"King Ferrum did not put great importance on putting up barriers so the Famine happened, right? If I remember correctly, King Ferrum has 9 high-level Sorcerers. All of them never participated in the construction of barriers. I guess it would still not be enough even if I release the sorcerers in jail and assign them to the task." (Almis)

"They're not enough huh. However, in the Rosyth Kingdom, we have the national barrier put up by Julia-sama. Therefore, at the minimum, we need to assign one high-level sorcerer for the job."

One person minimum?

Hmmm... Tetra or Soyon or Ruru? Which one should I pick?

"I heard that a young sorcerer's soul would be more suitable for soul-riding because they're more energetic. Therefore you should conserve those three."

But then I won't have any high-class sorcerer left?

"Sir Almis, I think I know someone suitable for the role." Said Bolus who was all but silent from the beginning.

What could it be?

"The sorceress who engraved the sacred characters on Madame Tetra's back. The old woman should have been able to soul-ride a long time ago. Barrier construction and age should be unrelated, I believe. Therefore, why don't we try to leave it to the old sorceress?" (Bolus)

"That's a great idea." (Almis)

Alright, let's do that.

Though I feel bad making the elderly work.

"Umm... doesn't that mean we won't have anything to do?" Soyon asked as she raised her hand.

"No... no... I have lots of things I'll have to do for you guys." (Almis)

First, Sorcery training for the other sorcerers. Also, the manufacture of spear fuses.

Since I'll be having Tetra personally assisting me, I'll make Soyon and Ruru compensate in those fields.

"In other words, nothing's changed huh." Said Ruru.

Well, it's just like that I guess.

"After that, I want to increase the variety of animals we can use for Soul-riding. Yes, I'd like a dog for that after all. And then an owl or a bat for night-time reconnaissance." (Almis)

"And how do we acquire them?"

"For the meantime, I'll try and ask the Cretians. That country is always at war the whole year so they should probably be knowledgable"

That night.

"Nee. Almis." (Tetra)

"Hmm?? What is ihmmmmm!!" (Almis)

My lips got covered.

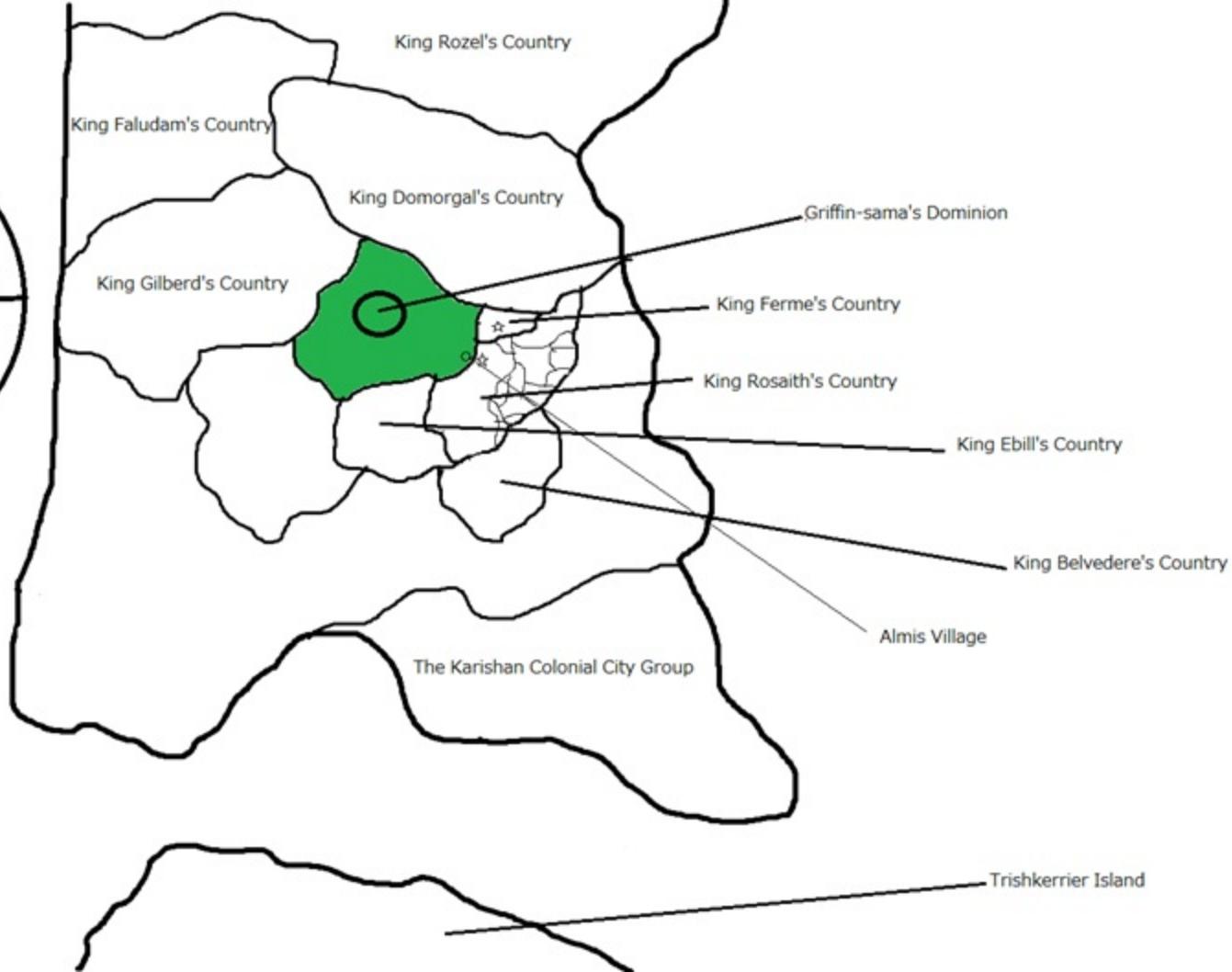
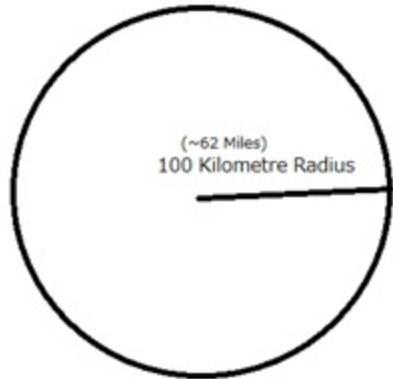
Tetra looks at me with moist eyes.

"Aren't you forgetting the most important duty of a lord?"

"Oh yes. I seem to have forgotten."

I grabbed Tetra's shoulders, held her closer to me, and stole a kiss from her lips.

Just like that I pushed her down.





PDF BY: TRAITORAIZEN